Batch 90 and User Defined Function (UDF) Programming Language Reference (Software Release 4.0)
**WARNING** notices as used in this instruction apply to hazards or unsafe practices that could result in personal injury or death.

**CAUTION** notices apply to hazards or unsafe practices that could result in property damage.

**NOTES** highlight procedures and contain information that assists the operator in understanding the information contained in this instruction.

## WARNING

**INSTRUCTION MANUALS**

DO NOT INSTALL, MAINTAIN, OR OPERATE THIS EQUIPMENT WITHOUT READING, UNDERSTANDING, AND FOLLOWING THE PROPER **Elsag Bailey** INSTRUCTIONS AND MANUALS; OTHERWISE, INJURY OR DAMAGE MAY RESULT.

**RADIO FREQUENCY INTERFERENCE**

MOST ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT IS INFLUENCED BY RADIO FREQUENCY INTERFERENCE (RFI). CAUTION SHOULD BE EXERCISED WITH REGARD TO THE USE OF PORTABLE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT IN THE AREA AROUND SUCH EQUIPMENT. PRUDENT PRACTICE DICTATES THAT SIGNS SHOULD BE POSTED IN THE VICINITY OF THE EQUIPMENT CAUTIONING AGAINST THE USE OF PORTABLE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT.

**POSSIBLE PROCESS UPSETS**

MAINTENANCE MUST BE PERFORMED ONLY BY QUALIFIED PERSONNEL AND ONLY AFTER SECURING EQUIPMENT CONTROLLED BY THIS PRODUCT. ADJUSTING OR REMOVING THIS PRODUCT WHILE IT IS IN THE SYSTEM MAY UPSET THE PROCESS BEING CONTROLLED. SOME PROCESS UPSETS MAY CAUSE INJURY OR DAMAGE.

## AVERTISSEMENT

**MANUELS D'OPÉRATION**

NE PAS METTRE EN PLACE, RÉPARER OU FAIRE FONCTIONNER L'ÉQUIPEMENT SANS AVOIR LU, COMPRIS ET SUIVI LES INSTRUCTIONS RÉGLEMENTAIRES DE **Elsag Bailey**. TOUTE NÉGLIGENCE À CET ÉGARD POURRAIT ÊTRE UNE CAUSE D'ACCIDENT OU DE DÉFAILLANCE DU MATÉRIEL.

**PERTURBATIONS PAR FRÉQUENCE RADIO**

LA PLUPART DES ÉQUIPEMENTS ÉLECTRONIQUES SONT SENSIBLES AUX PERTURBATIONS PAR FRÉQUENCE RADIO. DES PRÉCAUTIONS DEVRONT ÊTRE PRISES LORS DE L'UTILISATION DU MATÉRIEL DE COMMUNICATION PORTATIF. LA PRUDENCE EXIGE QUE LES PRÉCAUTIONS À PRENDRE DANS CE CAS SOIENT SIGNALÉES AUX ENDROITS VOULUS DANS VOTRE USINE.

**PERTURBATIONS DU PROCÉDÉ**

L'ENTRETIEN DOIT ÊTRE ASSURÉ PAR UNE PERSONNE QUALIFIÉE EN CONSIDÉRANT L'ASPECT SÉCURITAIRE DES ÉQUIPEMENTS CONTRÔLÉS PAR CE PRODUIT. L'AJUSTEMENT ET/OU L'EXTRACTION DE CE PRODUIT PEUT OCCASIONNER DES À-COUPS AU PROCÉDÉ CONTRÔLÉ LORSQU'IL EST INSÉRÉ DANS UNE SYSTÈME ACTIF. CES À-COUPS PEUVENT ÉGALEMENT OCCASIONNER DES BLESSURES OU DES DOMMAGES MATÉRIELS.

## NOTICE

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Elsag Bailey, its affiliates, employees, and agents, and the authors and contributors to this publication specifically disclaim all liabilities and warranties, express and implied (including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose), for the accuracy, currency, completeness, and/or reliability of the information contained herein and/or for the fitness for any particular use and/or for the performance of any material and/or equipment selected in whole or part with the user of/or in reliance upon information contained herein. Selection of materials and/or equipment is at the sole risk of the user of this publication.

This document contains proprietary information of Elsag Bailey, Elsag Bailey Process Automation, and is issued in strict confidence. Its use, or reproduction for use, for the reverse engineering, development or manufacture of hardware or software described herein is prohibited. No part of this document may be photocopied or reproduced without the prior written consent of Elsag Bailey.
The Batch 90™ programming language provides a method of configuring batch sequence strategies. The User Defined Function (UDF) programming language provides a method of creating a custom control function. This instruction explains the Batch 90 and UDF programming languages.

**NOTE:** The Batch 90 terms used in this instruction comply with the ISA-S88.01-1995 standard. Elsag Bailey specific terms used in previous versions are listed in Section 4 of this instruction for those who wish to continue to use these terms.
List of Effective Pages

Total number of pages in this instruction is 322, consisting of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page No.</th>
<th>Change Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Effective Pages</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii through viii</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-1 through 1-4</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-1 through 2-20</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-1 through 3-12</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1 through 4-251</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-1 through A-15</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-1 through B-7</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index-1 through Index-5</td>
<td>Original</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an update is received, insert the latest changed pages and dispose of the superseded pages.

**NOTE:** On an update page, the changed text or table is indicated by a vertical bar in the outer margin of the page adjacent to the changed area. A changed figure is indicated by a vertical bar in the outer margin next to the figure caption. The date the update was prepared will appear beside the page number.
# Table of Contents

**SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION** ........................................................................................................1-1
- OVERVIEW .................................................................................................................................1-1
- ENHANCEMENTS .....................................................................................................................1-1
- INTENDED USER ......................................................................................................................1-2
- INSTRUCTION CONTENT .........................................................................................................1-2
- HOW TO USE THIS INSTRUCTION .......................................................................................1-2
- DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS ....................................................................................................1-3
- GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS ..................................................................1-3
- REFERENCE DOCUMENTS ......................................................................................................1-4

**SECTION 2 - BATCH 90 DESCRIPTION** ..................................................................................2-1
- INTRODUCTION .......................................................................................................................2-1
- UNIT PROCEDURES ...............................................................................................................2-1
- BATCH PROGRAMS ...............................................................................................................2-3
  - Batch Data Types ...............................................................................................................2-4
  - Phase Subroutine ...............................................................................................................2-4
  - Function Subroutine .........................................................................................................2-6
  - Monitor Subroutine ..........................................................................................................2-7
- BATCH PROGRAM CONSTRUCTION .....................................................................................2-8
  - Monitor Subroutine Definitions .......................................................................................2-9
    - Basic Device Interlocking ..............................................................................................2-9
    - Reactor Protection Interlock .........................................................................................2-10
    - Function Subroutine Definitions ..................................................................................2-11
    - Phase Subroutine Definitions .......................................................................................2-11
      - CLEANING.REACTOR Phase .....................................................................................2-12
      - ADD_B.OR_C Phase Subroutine ..............................................................................2-12
      - ADD.D Phase Subroutine ..........................................................................................2-14
      - Ramp Temperature Of Reactor Phase Subroutine ..................................................2-15
      - BRINE.ON.JACKET Phase Subroutine ....................................................................2-15
      - DUMP.PRODUCT Phase Subroutine ..........................................................................2-15
      - BATCH SEQUENCE FUNCTION CODE ...............................................................2-15

**SECTION 3 - USER DEFINED FUNCTION (UDF) DESCRIPTION** .............................................3-1
- INTRODUCTION .......................................................................................................................3-1
- UDF PROGRAMS .......................................................................................................................3-1
  - Data ........................................................................................................................................3-1
  - State Subroutine ..................................................................................................................3-2
  - Function Subroutine .........................................................................................................3-3
  - Monitor Subroutines .........................................................................................................3-4
- UDF PROGRAM EXECUTION ..................................................................................................3-4
- UDF PROGRAM CONSTRUCTION ..........................................................................................3-5
  - Monitor Subroutine Definition .........................................................................................3-6
  - Function Subroutine Definitions .......................................................................................3-6
  - State Subroutine Definitions ..............................................................................................3-7

**SECTION 4 - FUNCTION LIBRARY** ..........................................................................................4-1
- INTRODUCTION .......................................................................................................................4-1
- SYNTAX .........................................................................................................................................4-1
  - Comments ..........................................................................................................................4-1
  - Names .....................................................................................................................................4-1
  - Lines .......................................................................................................................................4-2
  - Reserved Words/Constants/Directives ...............................................................................4-2
# SECTION 4 - FUNCTION LIBRARY (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressions</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notation</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational Operators and Expressions</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable To List Or Array Comparisons</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable To Limits Comparisons</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Array Comparisons</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum/Maximum Array Values</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boolean Operators and Expressions</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arithmetic Operators and Expressions</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local/Global Conventions</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMANDS AND STATEMENTS</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACK</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACQUIRE</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVANCED PID</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#ALPHA</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANALOG EXCEPTION REPORT</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY</td>
<td>4-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSIGNMENT</td>
<td>4-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATCH</td>
<td>4-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATCH DATA</td>
<td>4-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATCH SEQUENCE</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBUF</td>
<td>4-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK ARRAY</td>
<td>4-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>4-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL</td>
<td>4-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAMPAIGN</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE</td>
<td>4-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#CASESENSE</td>
<td>4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE CONVERSION</td>
<td>4-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMON SEQUENCE</td>
<td>4-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECT</td>
<td>4-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST</td>
<td>4-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST ARRAY</td>
<td>4-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
<td>4-69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>4-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTINUOUS</td>
<td>4-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTROL STATION</td>
<td>4-76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE TIME</td>
<td>4-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>4-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA BUFFER</td>
<td>4-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA EXPORT</td>
<td>4-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#DEBUG LEVEL</td>
<td>4-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATIONS</td>
<td>4-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#_DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEVICE DRIVER</td>
<td>4-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIGITAL EXCEPTION REPORT</td>
<td>4-101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIGIT</td>
<td>4-104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD</td>
<td>4-105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE FAULT CODE</td>
<td>4-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DONE</td>
<td>4-107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#EJECT</td>
<td>4-108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD</td>
<td>4-109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE FAULT CODE</td>
<td>4-110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section/Function Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENDSUBR</td>
<td>4-111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAULT</td>
<td>4-112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAULT LOGIC</td>
<td>4-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIRST CYCLE</td>
<td>4-114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR...END FOR LOOP</td>
<td>4-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION</td>
<td>4-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION BLOCK</td>
<td>4-122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION BLOCK ARRAY</td>
<td>4-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION GENERATOR</td>
<td>4-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOBAL DATA STRUCTURES (INTEGRATORS, TIMERS, ETC)</td>
<td>4-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#HIHI</td>
<td>4-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HISTORIAN BUFFER</td>
<td>4-133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HISTORIAN STATUS</td>
<td>4-134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLD</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLD LOGIC</td>
<td>4-136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF</td>
<td>4-137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF THEN...ENDIF</td>
<td>4-138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF THEN...ELSE...ENDIF</td>
<td>4-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#INCLUDE</td>
<td>4-140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INPUT</td>
<td>4-141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRATOR</td>
<td>4-143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST OPERATION</td>
<td>4-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST PHASE</td>
<td>4-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST SUBR</td>
<td>4-147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#LIST</td>
<td>4-148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOT</td>
<td>4-149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#MAXPARALLEL</td>
<td>4-150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR</td>
<td>4-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER</td>
<td>4-158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT OPERATION</td>
<td>4-163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT PHASE</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT STATE</td>
<td>4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#NOLIST</td>
<td>4-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL LOGIC</td>
<td>4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMALIZE STRING</td>
<td>4-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION</td>
<td>4-169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTPUT</td>
<td>4-171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE</td>
<td>4-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE NUMBER</td>
<td>4-174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE SUBR</td>
<td>4-175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAMP DATA</td>
<td>4-181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBUF</td>
<td>4-184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE ENTRY</td>
<td>4-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE CONTROL MEMORY</td>
<td>4-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE MANUAL SET CONSTANT</td>
<td>4-190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE MOTOR CONTROL</td>
<td>4-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT...UNTIL</td>
<td>4-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESERVE</td>
<td>4-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function Block</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESET</td>
<td>4-197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART</td>
<td>4-198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART LOGIC</td>
<td>4-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART POINT</td>
<td>4-200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESUME</td>
<td>4-201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESUME AT</td>
<td>4-202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>4-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET</td>
<td>4-204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET AND WAIT</td>
<td>4-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIZEOF</td>
<td>4-206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKIP CYCLE</td>
<td>4-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMITH PREDICTOR</td>
<td>4-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START</td>
<td>4-212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATE SUBR</td>
<td>4-213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEP SUBR</td>
<td>4-215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBPHASE</td>
<td>4-216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR STATUS</td>
<td>4-218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXT SELECTOR</td>
<td>4-219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER</td>
<td>4-222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#TITLE</td>
<td>4-225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF TYPE</td>
<td>4-226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNACQUIRE</td>
<td>4-227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNCONNECT</td>
<td>4-228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT DATA</td>
<td>4-229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT PARAMETERS</td>
<td>4-232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNRESERVE</td>
<td>4-234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>4-235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
<td>4-236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
<td>4-240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>4-244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT FOR</td>
<td>4-248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT UNTIL</td>
<td>4-249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT WHILE</td>
<td>4-250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHILE...ENDWHILE</td>
<td>4-251</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**APPENDIX A - SAMPLE APPLICATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Phase Subroutines</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch 90 Program Implementation Requirements</td>
<td>A-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logic Execution Control Flow</td>
<td>A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Sequences</td>
<td>A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Sequence Function Block Diagram</td>
<td>A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Sequence Communication</td>
<td>A-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquiring Control Of A CSEQ Function Block</td>
<td>A-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical Application</td>
<td>A-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER DEFINED FUNCTION (UDF)</td>
<td>A-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of Contents (continued)

APPENDIX B - STATE TRANSITION DIAGRAM................................................................. B-1
BATCH SEQUENCE STATES.............................................................................................. B-1
BATCH SEQUENCE TRANSITIONS..................................................................................... B-3

List of Figures

No. Title Page
2-1. Example Batch Process ..........................................................................................2-2
2-2. Batch Sequence Listing of Operations ................................................................2-2
2-3. Example Unit Procedure .......................................................................................2-3
2-4. Phase Subroutine Structure .................................................................................2-5
2-5. Function Subroutine Structure .............................................................................2-6
2-6. Monitor Subroutine Structure ...............................................................................2-7
2-7. Example Batch Data Section .................................................................................2-9
2-8. Example Function Block Configuration ...............................................................2-10
2-9. Example Monitor Subroutine for Basic Device Interlocking ...............................2-10
2-10. Example Monitor Subroutine for Reactor Protection Interlocking ..................2-11
2-11. Example Device Mode Change Function Subroutine ......................................2-12
2-12. Example Cleaning Reactor Phase Subroutine ..................................................2-13
2-13. Example Add Component B or C Phase Subroutine .........................................2-14
2-14. Example Add Component D Phase Subroutine .................................................2-16
2-15. Example Ramp Reactor Temperature Phase Subroutine ................................2-17
2-16. Example Put Jacket on Low Temperature Brine Phase Subroutine ...............2-18
2-17. Example Dump Product Phase Subroutine ......................................................2-19
2-18. Example Batch Sequence Interface Logic .........................................................2-20
3-1. State Subroutine Structure ..................................................................................3-2
3-2. Function Subroutine Structure ............................................................................3-3
3-3. Monitor Subroutine Structure .............................................................................3-4
3-4. Example UDF Process ........................................................................................3-5
3-5. Example Data Section ........................................................................................3-7
3-6. Example Level Controller and Pump Function Block Configurations ............3-8
3-7. Example UDF Function Block Configuration ......................................................3-9
3-8. Example Monitor Subroutine for Determining Pump Status .............................3-10
3-9. Example Function Subroutine to Start a Pump ...............................................3-10
3-10. Example Function Subroutine to Stop a Pump .................................................3-11
3-11. Example State Subroutine for Initializing the Pumps .....................................3-11
3-12. Example State Subroutine for Running the Pumps .........................................3-12
4-1. Example Production Train ..................................................................................4-46
4-2. Multi-State Device Driver Digit Positions ..........................................................4-104
4-3. Function Subroutine Structure ...........................................................................4-117
4-4. Example Function Generator .............................................................................4-128
4-5. Monitor Subroutine Structure ............................................................................4-152
4-6. Phase Subroutine Structure ...............................................................................4-175
4-7. State Subroutine Structure ................................................................................4-213
A-1. Example Parallel Phase Subroutine Unit Procedure .........................................A-2
A-2. Example Phase 3 Program Logic Flow Diagram ..............................................A-4
A-3. Example Common Sequence Function Block Configuration .........................A-5
A-4. Example Usage of Common Sequence ...............................................................A-7
List of Figures (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-5</td>
<td>Example Phase Subroutine Using CSEQ Commands</td>
<td>A-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-6</td>
<td>Example UDF Process</td>
<td>A-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7</td>
<td>Example UDF Program (Page 1 of 4)</td>
<td>A-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7</td>
<td>Example UDF Program (Page 2 of 4)</td>
<td>A-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7</td>
<td>Example UDF Program (Page 3 of 4)</td>
<td>A-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-7</td>
<td>Example UDF Program (Page 4 of 4)</td>
<td>A-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-8</td>
<td>Example UDF Function Block Configuration</td>
<td>A-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-1</td>
<td>Example State Transition Diagram</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-1</td>
<td>Glossary of Terms and Abbreviations</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>Reference Documents</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>Reserved Words</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-2</td>
<td>Reserved Constants</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-3</td>
<td>Reserved Reference Extensions</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-4</td>
<td>Reserved Directives</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td>Operators and Expressions</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-1</td>
<td>Parallel Phase Subroutine CHARGE_REACTOR Locations</td>
<td>A-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION

OVERVIEW

Batch 90 and User Defined Function (UDF) are programming languages whose purpose is to create sequence control logic using descriptive, readable, and understandable statements. The Batch 90 programming language is specifically designed to implement flexible sequences in which the order of operations and parameter data are specified by recipes. Similarly, the UDF programming language is designed to implement fixed sequences for which the order of operations is less flexible.

ENHANCEMENTS

Version 4.0 of Batch 90 and User Defined Function (UDF) offers the following enhancements over previous versions:

- The interfaces for all tools associated with the Batch 90 and UDF programming languages have been enhanced to follow the style of the Microsoft® Windows® 95 operating system. This provides a graphical user interface that is easier to understand and use.

- Both Batch 90 and UDF programming language compilers have been enhanced to include a text editor that is fully integrated with all other batch tools.

- Support for constant and variable string arrays that allows for more streamlined coding of complex string manipulations.

Additional enhancements to Batch 90 include:

- The ability to specify alphanumeric campaign, batch, lot, and recipe identifiers allows for more meaningful naming conventions.

- Support for command and status string variables in the common sequence data structures enabling the passing of alphanumeric data between common sequence applications.

- The ability of phases (formerly step subroutines) to extend beyond operation (formerly phase) boundaries.

Information regarding features added to this product as the document was being printed is available in a README.B90 or README.UDF file located in the directory specified during the
installation process. This is an ASCII document file and can be routed to a printer via Windows or DOS commands. Print this file and append it to this document.

INTENDED USER

This instruction provides the necessary information to utilize the Batch 90 and UDF programming languages. It is intended for programmers with batch process or sequential logic control experience and a working knowledge of function codes and the Elsag Bailey CAD/EWS software. The programmer should also be familiar with the configuration of operator interface stations.

INSTRUCTION CONTENT

This instruction contains four sections and two appendices. It also includes a Table of Contents, List of Figures, List of Tables, and Index giving several options to locate specific information quickly. Appendices supplement information presented in the individual sections. The sections that make up this instruction include:

- **Introduction**: Provides an overview of the Batch 90 and UDF programming languages and this instruction.
- **Batch 90 Description**: Describes the Batch 90 programming language.
- **User Defined Function (UDF) Description**: Describes the User Defined Function (UDF) programming language.
- **Function Library**: Provides detailed information about and an example of each command and statement. Also explained are the rules, reserved words, and logic operators used in commands and statements.

HOW TO USE THIS INSTRUCTION

Read this instruction through in sequence before attempting to program using the Batch 90 or UDF programming languages. It is important to become familiar with the entire contents of the instruction prior to creating any programs to insure maximum use of all programming language capabilities.

This instruction limits the information presented in each section to only specific items required to complete the desired task. The organization enables finding specific information quickly, and permits using this instruction as a reference after becoming fully familiar with the programming languages.

Be sure to read notes in text. Notes provide:

- Additional information.
• Information that should be considered before using a certain command or statement.

**DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS**

This document uses standard text conventions throughout to represent keys, user data inputs and display items:

**KEY**
Identifies a keyboard key.

Example: Press **ENTER**

**Display item**
Any item that displays on the screen appears as italic text in this document.

Examples:  
- *F7 - DELETE UDF* (menu selection)  
- *Invalid definition* (message)  
- *Select function* (prompt)

**File name**
Any file names and file extensions appear as bold-italic text.

Example: **PROCESS.B90**

The document uses a specific set of text conventions for user inputs:

**BOLD**
Identifies any user input or part of a command line that is not optional or variable, and must be entered exactly as shown.

**italic**
Identifies a variable parameter in user input or a command line.

**[]**
The brackets indicate a parameter is optional. Text within the brackets still follows the previously described conventions. The brackets only designate optional information and are not actually entered.

Example: **NEXT OPERATION [exp]**

**GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS**

Table 1-1 is a glossary of terms and abbreviations used in this instruction. It contains those terms and abbreviations that are unique to Elsag Bailey or have a definition that is different from standard industry usage.
Table 1-1. Glossary of Terms and Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Computer aided design. A Bailey computerized drawing package that allows an engineer/technician to create function block control logic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFI-NET®</td>
<td>Advanced data communication highway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFP</td>
<td>Multi-function processor module. A multiple-loop controller with data acquisition and information processing capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OIS</td>
<td>Operator interface station. Integrated operator console with data acquisition and reporting capabilities. It provides a digital access into the process for flexible control and monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant Loop</td>
<td>Network 90® data communication highway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

This instruction provides information about the Batch 90 and UDF programming languages only. Table 1-2 lists additional documents that relate to associated hardware and software.

Table 1-2. Reference Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Document</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I-E96-200</td>
<td>Function Code Application Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-E96-201</td>
<td>Multi-Function Processor Module (IMMFP01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-E96-202</td>
<td>Multi-Function Processor Module (IMMFP02)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-E96-203</td>
<td>Multi-Function Processor Module (IMMFP03)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-E96-770</td>
<td>Module Configuration Tools (Release 1.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBPEEU330251A0</td>
<td>Batch Data Manager (Release 4.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© Registered trademark of Elsag Bailey Process Automation.
SECTION 2 - BATCH 90 DESCRIPTION

INTRODUCTION
This section describes unit recipes, batch programs, operations, and subroutines. This section also defines what they do, and how they interact with each other.

UNIT PROCEDURES
A unit procedure is a plan for executing a batch sequence. A unit recipe is organized as a sequence of operations. An alphanumeric descriptor identifies each unit procedure. The unit procedure specifies the following information for each operation:

1. The names of the phase subroutines that the operation will execute. An operation can specify any phase subroutine contained in the batch program. For example, operation five of a particular unit procedure may call the phase subroutine named BRINE_ON_JACKET. Operation five of another unit procedure may call the phase subroutine named ADD_B_OR_C. The operation numbers specify the normal execution order of the operations. The compiler directive #MAX-PARALLEL limits the number of phase subroutines that can be assigned to any given operation.

2. The formulation data for each operation. The selected phase subroutines specify the parameter lists. The formulation data is passed from the unit procedure to the associated phase subroutine in accordance with the respective parameter lists. For example, operation five of a unit procedure calls phase subroutine ADD_B_OR_C. The formulation data specifies the quantity of component B to be added to the reactor and a default time during which the addition must be completed. Therefore, operation five of this unit procedure has two pieces of formulation data associated with it. This data passes to the phase subroutine ADD_B_OR_C through the parameter list.

The formulation data associated with the operation does not have to be numerical data exclusively. For example, it is possible to pass device drivers, function block identities, etc. This is a very powerful feature. It allows generic phase subroutines to be written and the passing of actual devices and sensors to be used from the unit procedure to the batch program logic.

Example Unit Procedure
Figure 2-1 shows a diagram of a simple batch process. This process has several operations. Figure 2-2 is a listing of these operations. A phase subroutine performs each operation.
A unit procedure specifies the operation execution order which specifies the order that phase subroutines are executed and the data that is passed. Figure 2-3 is a listing of a typical unit procedure for this process.

Executed stop is always operation zero of every unit procedure. When the executed stop input of the batch sequence function block goes to a one, the batch sequence block executes operation zero. Therefore, any specific logic that is to be performed on an executed stop must be configured within a phase subroutine that is in operation zero of the unit procedure. Numbering of operations is from zero to 250. Operation zero must be present or the unit procedure editor will renumber the operations so that the first operation is operation zero.

Create unit procedures using the unit procedure editor. Establish LO and HI values in the unit procedure using the editor.
A batch program consists of data declaration sections (BATCH or UNIT DATA) and a set of subroutines. There are three types of subroutines: phase, function, and monitor. Each batch sequence function block will have one batch program file associated with it. Several different batch programs, each associated with a different batch sequence function block, can reside in a single MFP module.

Use the editor within the Batch Data Manager to write Batch 90 programs. If necessary, any word processor or text editor that outputs an ASCII formatted file can be used to create batch files. The text file is the source file. The compiler processes the program file and checks the syntax before generating the executable object file.

This is a general overview of these program elements (refer to Section 4 for detailed explanations).
Batch Data Types

Batch data defines data that is available to all subroutines of a given batch program. Examples of information of global importance are control loops, devices (pumps, valves, etc.), and function blocks used to solve calculation or interlock problems. The advantage of batch data declaration is that the data is permanent, defined only once, and available to all subroutines.

There are four types of batch data:

- Function blocks.
- Active data structures (integrators, timers, ramps, etc.).
- Variables and constants.
- Monitor subroutine declarations.

Phase Subroutine

The phase subroutine is the major part of a batch program. It is responsible for controlling the sequence of activities within an operation or across multiple operations. The number of operations a multi-operation phase (superphase) subroutine will operate through is specified in the unit procedure editor.

Within a unit procedure, each operation specifies the names of phase subroutines to be executed for that operation. Each phase subroutine contains a parameter list for which values are specified by the unit procedure. Phase subroutine execution may extend beyond operation boundaries. Such multi-operation phases (superphase) are specified within the unit recipe editor. When the single operation phase subroutine completes its activities, control passes to the next operation. The same phase subroutine may be called by different operations, or called multiple times by an operation. The multi-operation phase subroutine continues to execute across operation boundaries until the phase subroutine completes its activities. Figure 2-4 shows the structure of a phase subroutine.

Heading Section

This section defines the phase subroutine name, parameter list, and optional phase comment. The name allows the unit procedure to address a phase subroutine by a meaningful title such as ADD_A. The parameter list defines the parameter names, data types, (optional) default values, and allowable selections for the formulation data passed from the unit recipe.

Declarations Section

The declarations section defines the data structures that are local to the phase subroutine and calls made to local monitor subroutines. Local data typically is timers, integrators, ramps, variables, etc. Local data can only be used by the phase subroutine that declared it. Also, this data is temporary; it is only
valid while the phase subroutine is active. Local data divides into three types:

- Variables.
- Constants.
- Active Data Structures.

Phase subroutines have access to all global data (including function blocks) declared in any batch or unit data section of the batch program that comes before the phase subroutine. No additional declaration is necessary or allowed inside the phase subroutine.

**Continuous Section**

The entire continuous section executes every function block cycle in parallel with the sequential logic (NORMAL, HOLD, FAULT, RESTART). It is ideal for defining interlock logic that must be performed continuously and is specific to the phase subroutine. The continuous section prohibits commands that can result in a wait condition. Examples of prohibited commands are REPEAT, WAIT, WAIT UNTIL, etc.

**Normal Logic**

Normal logic is an executable section that performs the normal, sequential logic of a recipe phase within an operation of a unit procedure. It begins when the phase subroutine starts. It remains in operation until:

1. The last statement of the normal logic executes. The phase subroutine has ended and control passes to the next phase subroutine called for by the unit procedure. This is true for all operations except for the special case of operation number one (executed stop).

2. The mode of the phase subroutine changes from NORMAL to FAULT or HOLD. The mode typically changes to FAULT by some interlock failure detected by the continuous section or a
monitor subroutine. Typically, an operator action is required to place a phase subroutine into HOLD.

3. The execution of a NEXT OPERATION statement causes the current phase subroutine to become inactive. Also, the next phase subroutine called for by the unit procedure becomes active.

4. The execution of a DONE statement forces the program execution to batch complete state.

Fault Logic
Fault logic is the section that executes user defined statements when a fault condition occurs. When a fault occurs in the normal logic, continuous logic or a monitor subroutine, execution of normal logic suspends and control passes to the fault logic. In the fault logic define the executable commands necessary to hold or stop the batch safely while solving the problem. Once the fault logic completes, the sequence goes into holding state.

Hold Logic
The purpose of hold logic is to allow execution of safety shutdowns when the batch sequence is placed into hold. Control transfers from normal logic to this section when the Run/Hold input to the batch sequence block toggles to hold.

Restart Logic
Restart logic performs a restart of a batch sequence placed into the holding state either through a fault or hold command. Restart logic executes before normal logic and its purpose is to return the batch unit to a state where normal logic can continue operation.

NOTE: Refer to Appendix B for phase subroutine execution details.

Function Subroutine
The function subroutine allows the definition of commonly used logic. This subroutine is then used as often as needed. This aids in reducing the program size. A function subroutine may be called from a phase, monitor, or other function subroutine. A function subroutine takes control from the caller, executes to completion and then returns control to the caller. Figure 2-5 shows the function subroutine structure.

```
FUNCTION name (HEADING section)
  Parameter list (HEADING section)
  DECLARATIONS
  Local data
  EXECUTABLE
  Executable statements
ENDSUBR [name]
```

Figure 2-5. Function Subroutine Structure
**Monitor Subroutine**

Monitor subroutines execute continuous logic that the user can stop and start when desired. Once defined, monitor subroutines can be called by multiple phase subroutines. Executed continuously at the function block cycle, monitor subroutines operate in parallel with normal logic according to the state transition diagram in Appendix B. Refer to Figure 2-6 for the monitor subroutine structure.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MONITOR name  (HEADING section)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter List  (HEADING section)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DECLARATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONTINUOUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Executable Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENDSUBR [name]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

*Figure 2-6. Monitor Subroutine Structure*

The monitor subroutine components are very similar to those of the phase subroutine. Monitor subroutines can be declared either locally (in phase subroutines) or in a batch data section. When declared locally they can be referenced only in the active phase subroutine that declared the monitor subroutine.

When declared in a batch data section, the monitor subroutine can be referenced by any phase subroutine that follows the declaration. Once started, a monitor subroutine will continue to execute until stopped or until the batch is complete. It will even run if the sequence is in holding.

**NOTE:** A monitor subroutine cannot start itself.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heading Section</th>
<th>This section defines the function name and parameter list.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declarations Section</td>
<td>Local data refers to data used solely within the subroutine. This data is valid only while the subroutine is active. Only variables and constants can be declared local to a function subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable Section</td>
<td>Execution starts with the first statement of the executable section and continues until a RETURN or ENDSUBR statement executes. Then, control transfers back to the caller.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
variables and constants can be declared local to a monitor subroutine.

Continuous Section

The monitor subroutine has only a continuous logic section. Continuous logic executes every function block cycle. A monitor subroutine may not contain any statements that can result in a wait condition (for example, REPEAT, WAIT UNTIL, etc.).

BATCH PROGRAM CONSTRUCTION

This section illustrates how to construct a batch program through an example. This example will show how to:

- Create batch data section.
- Create monitor subroutines.
- Create function subroutines.
- Create phase subroutines.

The batch process has several devices, control loops and alarms associated with it. These processes must be defined as function blocks (normally with the engineering work station). Then, add the function blocks to the program with batch declaration statements. The example declares two constants and 27 function blocks (with associated MFP addresses).

The block command identifies a configurable name that is assigned to a function block (for example, FV501) and function block type (for example, FC = DD meaning device driver).

Any function code can be declared and its value read by the batch program. For certain types of function codes (device drivers, multi-state device drivers, control stations, remote control memories and remote manual set constants, etc.) additional attributes are available. Reference extensions identify the attributes. Reference extensions give the batch language the ability to read or command attributes of these function blocks. For example, with a control station, the command CSNAME.SP allows the batch language to reference or change the set point of the declared control station called CSNAME. A detailed explanation of the reference extensions is in Section 4 of this document. Refer to Figure 2-7 for a batch data example.

It is possible to declare function blocks in the batch data section that do not exist in the module. Similarly, it is possible to declare function blocks incorrectly (for example, assign wrong function code numbers). The Batch 90 compiler does not check for these types of errors. Before the batch sequence function block goes into run mode, it will check to make sure that all function block declarations are correct. If not, the batch sequence block generates a fault (fault code -16).

Figure 2-8 is an example of how to configure device drivers and control loops using an engineering work station.
Monitor Subroutine Definitions

The batch process example has several levels of device interlocking. They are:

- Basic device interlocking.
- Reactor protection interlocking.

BASIC DEVICE INTERLOCKING

The control system must monitor all the valves associated with inlet reactant feed valves (FV501, FV502, FV503, and FV504) and the discharge valves (FV508 and FV509). These devices must be interlocked constantly and, in case of failure, a safety shutdown must be executed. Figure 2-9 is the configuration for this interlock. The purpose of the FAULT statement is to suspend the normal logic of the phase subroutine and start the fault logic. The numerical value after the FAULT statement allows the passing of a variable to the fault logic. This allows the identification of the specific fault. Although the figure shows a different fault number for each fault statement, it is not required that each fault number be unique.

Figure 2-7. Example Batch Data Section

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BATCH DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONST EXPIRED = 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST NOT_OPEN = 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV501, BLK = 100, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV502, BLK = 102, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV503, BLK = 104, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV504, BLK = 106, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV505, BLK = 108, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV506, BLK = 110, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV507, BLK = 112, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV508, BLK = 114, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV509, BLK = 116, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV510, BLK = 118, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV511, BLK = 120, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FV512, BLK = 122, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK FC503, BLK = 130, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TC501A, BLK = 142, FC = CS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TC501B, BLK = 150, FC = CS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK CIS, BLK = 200, FC = 79, OUT (0) = LT502, OUT (1) = FT503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK P1, BLK = 210, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK AG1, BLK = 212, FC = DD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK START PB, BLK = 300, FC = RCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK PHASE NUMBER, BLK = 320, FC = REMSET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK BUFFER, BLK = 330, FC = BBUF, OUT (0) = B00, OUT (1) = B01, OUT (2) = B02, OUT (3) = B03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TEXT_LINE_1, BLK = 500, FC = TEXT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TEXT_LINE_2, BLK = 510, FC = TEXT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TEXT_LINE_3, BLK = 520, FC = TEXT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TEXT_LINE_4, BLK = 530, FC = TEXT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK TEXT_LINE_5, BLK = 100, FC = TEXT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK OPER_MSG, BLK = 600, FC = DATAEXPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END DATA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
During the addition of component D, there is an exothermic reaction. Due to the possibility of a runaway reactor during the

```
MONITOR BASIC_INTERLOCKING
CONTINUOUS
  IF (FV501.STS = BAD) FAULT 1
  IF (FV502.STS = BAD) FAULT 2
  IF (FV503.STS = BAD) FAULT 3
  IF (FV504.STS = BAD) FAULT 4
  IF (FV510.STS = BAD) FAULT 5
  IF (FV508.STS = BAD) FAULT 6
  IF (FV509.STS = BAD) FAULT 7
ENDSUBR BASIC_INTERLOCKING
```

Figure 2-9. Example Monitor Subroutine for Basic Device Interlocking
addition of component D, the cooling system must be monitored to assure that all components are operating correctly. In addition, the temperature is also monitored. If either the cooling system malfunctions or the temperature rises above a certain level, then an emergency shutdown must be executed. The cooling system consists of transmitter TT501, pump P1, and valves FV505, FV506, FV511, and FV512. This monitor activity is only valid during those phase subroutines in which component D is added. Figure 2-10 shows the programming for the monitor subroutine providing reactor protection interlocking.

```
MONITOR REACTOR_PROTECTION VAR TEMPERATURE
DECLARATIONS
    VAR X
    CONTINUOUS
    IF (FV505.STS = BAD) FAULT 8
    IF (FV506.STS = BAD) FAULT 9
    IF (FV511.STS = BAD) FAULT 10
    IF (FV512.STS = BAD) FAULT 11
    IF (P1.STS = BAD) FAULT 12
    X = TEMPERATURE + 5
    IF (X > TC501A.PV) FAULT 13
ENDSUBR REACTOR_PROTECTION
```

*Figure 2-10. Example Monitor Subroutine for Reactor Protection Interlocking*

**Function Subroutine Definitions**

The devices in the batch sequence example can be either in manual or automatic mode. In manual mode, the operator has taken control. In automatic mode, the batch logic can control the devices. It is often necessary to put the devices into automatic. It is best to create a function subroutine to do this. Refer to Figure 2-11 for an example.

**Phase Subroutine Definitions**

This process has several processes that need to be defined. They are:

- Cleaning the reactor.
- Adding component B.
- Adding component C.
- Adding component D.
- Ramping the reactor temperature.
- Filling reactor jacket with low temperature brine.
- Dumping the product.
CLEANING.REACTOR PHASE

This phase subroutine opens the feed valve to component A (cleaning solvent), starts the agitator and waits for five minutes. When the five minutes are over, the feed valve shuts and the dump valve to solvent recovery (valve FV508) opens. A ten minute allowance provides time to empty the reactor.

The only interlocking needed is the basic device interlocking performed by the monitor subroutine BASIC_INTERLOCKING. In case of failure, all valves shut and the program informs the operator. There is no need to have restart logic for this phase subroutine. Refer to Figure 2-9 for monitor subroutine details.

Any text between an open and closed bracket (characters { }) is strictly a comment. The batch compiler includes comments in its reference listing, but they are ignored for all other purposes. Refer to Figure 2-12 for an example of a phase subroutine for cleaning the reactor.

ADD_B.OR_C PHASE SUBROUTINE

For the example batch process shown in Figure 2-1, it can be concluded that the phase logic required to add components B and C is identical. The only change is the inlet valve to be operated. Only one phase subroutine needs to be written. Which inlet valve to be operated and thereby which component to be added (B or C), is specified by the INLET_VALVE parameter. The allowable selections for the INLET_VALVE parameter are

```
FUNCTION INITIALIZE_VALVES
EXECUTABLE
  SET FV501.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV502.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV503.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV504.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV505.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV506.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV507.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV508.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV509.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV510.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV511.MODE = AUTO
  SET FV512.MODE = AUTO
  SET P1.MODE = AUTO
  SET AG1.MODE = AUTO
ENDSUBR INITIALIZE_VALVES
```

Figure 2-11. Example Device Mode Change Function Subroutine
specified by the selection list ("= (FV502, FV503)"). Thus the unit recipe will specify the following:

**INLET_VALVE**
Determine the component to add.

**CHARGE_AMOUNT**
Determines the amount of component to add.

**DEFAULT_TIME**
Determine the maximum time allowed to add the component.

The selected component is added to the reactor by opening the valve specified by the recipe and integrating the flow. When the integrated value (FIQ.VAL) is equal to or greater than the CHARGE_AMOUNT value, the inlet valve is closed.

This phase subroutine adds component B or C to the reactor by opening valve FV502 or FV503, integrating the flow and comparing it to the amount called for by the unit procedure. When the integrated value is equal to or greater than the amount called for, valve FV502 or FV503 closes.

The basic interlocking monitor subroutine performs the interlocking on this phase subroutine. In declaring the monitor subroutine, it is running unless the declaration specifies it stopped. Therefore, it is unnecessary to start the monitor in either the normal or continuous logic. Additionally, there is a test quality check on the flow signal to ensure a good 4 to
20-mA signal. There is also a default time. This means the phase subroutine can be active only so much time before generating a fault. Refer to Figure 2-13 for an example of the phase subroutine for adding component B or C.

```plaintext
PHASE SUBR ADD_B_OR_C

[This phase will charge the reactor with either component B or C. The component selection is made by the INLET_VALVE parameter (FV502 = B, FV503 = C). “CHARGE_AMOUNT” specifies the amount to be charged.]

DD INLET_VALVE = (FV502, FV503)
ANY CHARGE_AMOUNT
ANY DEFAULT_TIME

DECLARATIONS
  MONITOR BASIC_INTERLOCKING
  TIMER TIMER1 (SEC)
  INTEGRATOR FIQ

CONTINUOUS
  IF (FT503.Q = BAD) FAULT 1
  START TIMER1 DEFAULT_TIME
  IF (TIMER1.ALM = EXPIRED) FAULT 2
  IF (LT502.Q = BAD OR LT502.VAL > 100) SET AG1.CO = ON

NORMAL LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  SET INLET_VALVE.CO = OPEN
  START FIQB
  WAIT UNTIL (FIQ.VAL >= CHARGE_AMOUNT)
  SET INLET_VALVE.CO = CLOSED

FAULT LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  SET INLET_VALVE.CO = CLOSED
  IF (FAULT CODE = 1) DISPLAY MESSAGE 1 COLOR RED USING TEXT_LINE_1
  IF (FAULT CODE = 2) SET OPER_MSG.OSTR = “DEFAULT TIME ELAPSED”

HOLD LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  SET INLET_VALVE.CO = CLOSED
ENDSUBR ADD_B_OR_C
```

**Figure 2-13. Example Add Component B or C Phase Subroutine**

One other operation that needs to be controlled is the agitator. If the level in the tank is greater than 100 gallons or the transmitter tests bad, the agitator starts.

Two items pass from the unit procedure. These are given the type ANY, indicating numeric formulation values. Other types (such as DD for device drivers) can be passed from the unit procedure to the phase subroutine.

**ADD_D PHASE SUBROUTINE**

This phase subroutine is also similar to phase subroutine ADD_B_OR_C with the following exceptions: addition of component D is very exothermic. Therefore, the reactor protection monitor subroutine must be running. If the operator puts the reactor into hold, there must be hold logic to freeze the reactor (stop the reaction and put it into a safe state). There must be sufficient restart logic to allow the reactor’s cooling jacket to
switch to water and for the temperature to recover near set point before progressing.

The temperature controller set point is set to the value passed from the unit recipe. When the temperature set point is within one degree of the process variable, the phase subroutine ends.

Finally, there is a cook time specified in the unit recipe. Control must remain in this phase subroutine for a long enough period to complete the reaction. Figure 2-14 shows the logic for phase subroutine ADD_D.

**RAPID TEMPERATURE OF REACTOR PHASE SUBROUTINE**

This phase subroutine ramps the reactor temperature from one unit recipe parameter value to another. This phase subroutine runs during the exothermic part of the reaction (the reactor protection monitor subroutine must be used). Refer to Figure 2-15 for an example of the phase subroutine that ramps the reactor temperature.

**BRINE_ON_JACKET PHASE SUBROUTINE**

The jacket coolant switches from cooling water to low temperature brine. The jacket flushes with brine and then the brine return opens. The purpose of this is to prevent dilution of the brine system with water. Should there be a failure of the valves during this phase subroutine, the reactor freezes; the low temperature brine goes on and stays on. Refer to Figure 2-16 for the phase subroutine BRINE_ON_JACKET logic.

**DUMP_PRODUCT PHASE SUBROUTINE**

This phase subroutine opens the product discharge valve and allows material to go to the product header. After the level in the tank drops below 100 gallons, the tank flushes for five minutes with solvent. This material goes to the product header as well. If there is a fault during this phase subroutine, all valves shut and the operator receives alarms. Refer to Figure 2-17 for an example of a phase subroutine that dumps the product.

**BATCH SEQUENCE FUNCTION CODE**

Batch 90 language programs need to be linked to operator consoles using standard INFI 90® OPEN exception reporting function blocks. The batch sequence function code (function code 148) has inputs and outputs designated to interface with existing function blocks that generate exception reports. Refer to the Function Code Application Manual for detailed

® Registered trademark of Elsag Bailey Process Automation.
PHASE SUBR ADD_D
  ANY COOK_TIME
  ANY DEFAULT_TIME
  ANY REACTOR_TEMP
DECLARATIONS
  VAR X
  MONITOR BASIC_INTERLOCKING
  MONITOR REACTOR_PROTECTION (REACTOR_TEMP)
  TIMER TIMER1 (SEC)
  TIMER TIMER2 (SEC)
  TIMER TIMER3 (SEC)
  INTEGRATOR FIQD (FT503.VAL, MIN)
CONTINUOUS
  IF (FT503.Q = BAD) FAULT 1
  START TIMER1 DEFAULT_TIME
  IF (TIMER1.ALM = EXPIRED) FAULT 2
  IF (LT502.Q = BAD OR LT502.VAL => 100) SET AG1.CO = ON
NORMAL LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  START TIMER3 COOK_TIME
  SET FV506.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV511.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV505.CO = OPEN
  SET FV512.CO = OPEN
  SET P1.MODE = AUTO
  SET P1.CO = ON
  SET TC501B.MODE = MANUAL
  SET TC501A.SP = REACTOR TEMP
  SET TC501A.MODE = AUTO
  REPEAT
    X = ABS (TC501A.PV - TC501A.SP)
  UNTIL X > 1
  SET FV504.CO = OPEN
  START FIQD
  WAIT UNTIL (FIQD.VAL => TOTAL_FLOW_D)
  SET FV504.CO = CLOSED
  WAIT UNTIL (TIMER3.ALM = EXPIRED)
FAULT LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  SET FV504.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV506.CO = OPEN
  SET FV505.CO = CLOSED
  SET TC501A.SP = -20
  SET TC501A.MODE = AUTO
  START TIMER2 300
  WAIT UNTIL (TIMER2.ALM = EXPIRED)
  SET FV511.CO = OPEN
  SET FV512.CO = CLOSED
HOLD LOGIC
  CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES
  SET FV504.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV506.CO = OPEN
  SET FV505.CO = CLOSED
  SET TC501B.SP = -20
  SET TC501B.MODE = AUTO
  START TIMER2 100
  WAIT UNTIL (TIMER2.ALM = EXPIRED)
  SET FV511.CO = OPEN
  SET FV512.CO = CLOSED
RESTART LOGIC
  SET FV506.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV505.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV511.CO = CLOSED
  SET FV512.CO = CLOSED
ENDSUBR ADD_D

Figure 2-14. Example Add Component D Phase Subroutine
information about the batch sequence function code. A properly configured batch sequence function block allows:

- The running or holding of the batch program execution.
- Executed stopping of the batch program.
• Resetting the batch program from a previous unit recipe to a new unit recipe when a previous batch sequence aborts abnormally.

• Acknowledgment of messages.

• Changing an operation number within a unit recipe.

• Changing a unit recipe number when a batch program completes or is in holding.

Figure 2-18 shows the simplest configuration of a batch sequence function block interfaced with a remote manual set constant (RMSC) and remote control memory (RCM) function blocks. The remote manual set constants hold the values of the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHASE SUBR BRINE_ON_JACKET</th>
<th>ANY REACTOR_TEMP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DECLARATIONS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR BASIC_INTERLOCKING</td>
<td>RUNNING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER TIMER2 (SEC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NORMAL LOGIC</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501B.MODE = MANUAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501B.CO = 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.SP = REACTOR_TEMP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.MODE = AUTO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV506.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV505.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT FOR 100 SEC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV511.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV512.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FAULT LOGIC</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV506.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV505.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501B.MODE = MANUAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501B.CO = 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.SP = -20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.MODE = AUTO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START TIMER2 300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT UNTIL (TIMER2.ALM = EXPIRED)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV511.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV512.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOLD LOGIC</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALL INITIALIZE_VALVES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV504.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV506.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV505.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.SP = -20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET TC501A.MODE = AUTO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START TIMER2 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAIT UNTIL (TIMER2.ALM = EXPIRED)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV511.CO = OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET FV512.CO = CLOSED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2-16. Example Put Jacket on Low Temperature Brine Phase Subroutine
unit recipe and operation number. When the batch program is running, the remote manual set constant function blocks track the current unit recipe and operation number being executed. This allows the operator to determine what the current unit recipe and operation number are. The unit recipe and operation number can not be changed while the program is executing.

**NOTE:** Using the function code logic in Figure 2-18, the operation number will increment to (last operation + 1) as defined by the unit recipe. To restart the batch, select the starting operation number and cycle the run/hold push button to run. Failure to select the starting operation causes a -15 runtime fault code or the unintentional starting of a new recipe.

If the sequence stops executing, the track signals stop. At this point the operator can change the unit recipe and operation number using the remote manual set constant function blocks.

The program can stop executing in two ways. The first way is for the operator to hold the program execution. The second way is for fault logic within the program to cause the stop.

Refer to Appendix A for a more detailed CAD configuration.
Figure 2-18. Example Batch Sequence Interface Logic
SECTION 3 - USER DEFINED FUNCTION (UDF) DESCRIPTION

INTRODUCTION

This section describes what a UDF program is, what it does, and how it functions like a function code.

UDF PROGRAMS

A UDF program is a plan for executing a sequence of activities. The program consists of a data section and a set of subroutines. There are three types of subroutines: state subroutine, function subroutine, and monitor subroutine. Each UDF declaration function block will have one UDF program associated with it. Several UDF Type 1 (UDF1) and UDF Type 2 (UDF2) function blocks can reference the same UDF declaration function block.

Use the editor within the Batch Data Manager to write UDF programs. If necessary, any word processor that outputs an ASCII formatted file can be used to create batch files. The text file is the source file. The compiler processes the ASCII file and checks the syntax before generating the executable object file.

This is a general overview of these program elements (refer to Section 4 for detailed explanations).

Data

The data section defines the data (called global data) that is available to all subroutines in a given UDF program. Examples of information of global importance are control loops, devices (pumps, valves, etc.) and function blocks used to solve calculation or interlock problems. The advantages of global data declaration is that the data is permanent, defined only once, and available to all subroutines.

There are five types of global data:

- Inputs to UDF1, UDF2, and Auxiliary UDF function blocks.
- Outputs from UDF1, UDF2, and Auxiliary UDF function blocks.
- Specifications of UDF1, UDF2, and Auxiliary UDF function blocks.
- Function blocks.
- Variables and constants.
State Subroutine

The state subroutine is a major part of a UDF program. Every UDF program must have one or more state subroutines. They are responsible for controlling the flow of execution. Figure 3-1 shows the structure of a state subroutine.

![Figure 3-1. State Subroutine Structure](Image)

**Heading Section**
This section defines the state subroutine name. The name allows the program to address a state subroutine by a meaningful title.

**Declarations Section**
The declarations section defines the state subroutine local data and specifies calls to local monitor subroutines. Local data typically has timers, integrators, ramps, variables, etc. Local data can only be used by the state subroutine that declared it. Also, this data is temporary; it is only valid while the state subroutine is active. Local data divides into three types:

- Variables.
- Constants.
- Active Data Structures.

State subroutines have access to all data (including function blocks) declared in any data section of the UDF program that comes before the state subroutine. No additional declaration is necessary or allowed inside the state subroutine.

**Continuous Section**
The entire continuous section executes every function block cycle in parallel with the sequential logic (NORMAL and FAULT). It is ideal for defining interlock logic that must be performed continuously and is specific to the state subroutine. The continuous section prohibits commands that can result in a wait condition. Examples of prohibited commands are REPEAT, WAIT, WAIT UNTIL, etc.
Normal Logic
Normal logic is an executable section that performs the normal sequential logic of a state subroutine. It begins when the state subroutine starts. It remains in operation until:

1. The mode of the state subroutine changes from NORMAL to FAULT. The mode typically changes to FAULT by some interlock failure detected by the continuous section or a monitor subroutine.

2. The execution of a NEXT STATE statement causes the current state subroutine to become inactive. The next subroutine specified by the NEXT STATE statement becomes active.

Fault Logic
Fault logic is the section that executes user defined statements when a fault condition occurs. When a fault occurs in the normal logic, continuous logic, or a monitor subroutine, execution of normal logic suspends and control passes to the fault logic. In the fault logic, define the executable commands necessary to hold or stop the sequence safely while solving the problem.

Function Subroutine
The function subroutine allows the one time definition of commonly used logic and the reuse of this subroutine as often as needed. This aids in reducing the program size. A function subroutine may be called from a state subroutine, a monitor subroutine or another function subroutine. A function subroutine takes control from the caller, executes to completion, and then returns control to the caller. Figure 3-2 shows the function subroutine structure.

![Function Subroutine Structure](image)

**Heading Section**
This section defines the function name and parameter list.

**Declarations Section**
Local data refers to data used solely within the subroutine. This data is valid only while the subroutine is active. Only constants and variables can be declared local to a function subroutine.

**Executable Section**
Execution starts with the first statement of the executable section and continues until a RETURN or ENDSUBR statement executes. Then, control transfers back to the caller. If a function subroutine is called from normal logic, it can contain wait
Monitor Subroutines

Monitor subroutines execute interlock logic common to several state subroutines. Once defined, monitor subroutines can be called by multiple state subroutines. Executed continuously at the function block cycle, monitor subroutines operate in parallel with normal logic and effectively watch process interlock conditions. Fault mode operates when the monitor subroutine sets a fault flag. Normal logic then stops and control passes to the fault logic. Refer to Figure 3-3 for the monitor subroutine structure.

**Figure 3-3. Monitor Subroutine Structure**

- **Heading Section**: This section defines the monitor subroutine name and parameter list. The list defines the local parameter aliases (names used solely in the monitor subroutine).

- **Declarations Section**: Only variables, variable arrays, constants and constant arrays can be declared in a monitor subroutine.

- **Continuous Section**: The monitor subroutine has only a continuous logic section. Continuous logic executes every function block cycle. A monitor subroutine may not contain any statements that can result in a wait condition (for example, REPEAT, WAIT UNTIL, etc.).

**UDF PROGRAM EXECUTION**

Start-up of the Multi-Function Processor (MFP) modules by either powering up or changing from configure to execute mode causes the MFP modules to scan for all UDF configuration blocks before normal function block execution. The MFP modules will then load object files from NVRAM memory of the module into the dynamic RAM memory defined by the configuration block. If there is not enough memory allocated for the program to reside in or if there is no such object file, the module will go into error mode. After successful loading of the UDF files, the MFP module checks the UDF object file to verify all declarations to function blocks are correct. If an error occurs, the module goes into error mode.
Assuming all diagnostic tests pass, normal function block execution will begin. Each UDF type one or type two function block uses a declaration block and will contain the data values specific to the particular function block. All UDF function blocks can access the same UDF program but contain within themselves unique variables, timers, etc. pertaining to its own function block.

**UDF PROGRAM CONSTRUCTION**

This section illustrates how to construct a UDF program through an example. This example will show how to:

- Create the data section.
- Create monitor subroutines.
- Create function subroutines.
- Create state subroutines.

Figure 3-4 shows a diagram of a simple UDF process. The UDF process has several devices, control loops associated with it. These processes must be defined as function blocks (normally with the engineering work station). Then, add the function blocks to the program with data declaration statements. The example declares five variables, five function blocks (with associated MFP module addresses), and thirteen UDF block inputs.

![Figure 3-4. Example UDF Process](image-url)
The block command identifies a configurable name that is assigned to a function block (for example, HS101) and function block type (for example, FC = DD meaning device driver). Device driver has an additional descriptor for whether it is normal (zero output closes the valves) or inverted (zero output opens the valve). If not specified, the system will default to a normal status on a device driver.

Any function code can be declared and its value read by the UDF program. For certain types of function codes (device drivers, multi-state device drivers, control stations, remote control memories, remote manual set constants, etc.) additional attributes are available. Reference extensions identify the attributes. Reference extensions give the UDF language the ability to read or command attributes of these functions. For example, with a control station, the command CSNAME.SP allows the UDF language to reference or change the set point of the declared control station called CSNAME. A detailed explanation of the reference extensions is in Section 4 of this document. Refer to Figure 3-5 for a data example.

It is possible to declare function blocks in the data section that do not exist in the module. Similarly, it is possible to declare function blocks incorrectly (for example, assign wrong function code numbers). The UDF compiler does not check for these types of errors. Before the UDF declaration function block goes into run mode, it will check to make sure that all function block declarations are correct. If not, the MFP module will go into error mode and the block address of the incorrect declaration is indicated by status bytes of the MFP module.

Figure 3-6 is an example configuration for the level controller and each pump. Figure 3-7 is an example UDF function block configuration.

**Monitor Subroutine Definition**

It is necessary to monitor the status of the pumps in the system. The status is used to determine which pump is to be started next and which pump is to be stopped next based on run time. Figure 3-8 shows the configuration of this subroutine.

**Function Subroutine Definitions**

Pumps must be started and stopped in this example program. Function subroutines START_PUMP and STOP_PUMP perform these pump operations. Figure 3-9 shows the function subroutine that starts up a pump. Figure 3-10 shows the function subroutine that stops a pump.
State Subroutine Definitions

This process has two activities that need to be defined. They are:

- Initializing the pumps.
- Running the pumps

The INITIALIZE START state subroutine puts the device drivers into automatic mode and turns tracking on. This enables the bumpless transfer between automatic and manual mode. This subroutine also checks which pumps are running and sets their device driver so that the control stations will follow this field when the MFP module powers up. Refer to Figure 3-11.

The RUN_PUMPS state subroutine has two modes. In manual mode, the device drivers are put into manual mode and the pumps must be operated by the operators. In automatic mode, the device drivers are put into automatic mode and are started and stopped based on tank level. If one of the pumps fails, the next pump is started to insure the appropriate number of pumps are running. Refer to Figure 3-12.
**Figure 3-6. Example Level Controller and Pump Function Block Configurations**
Figure 3-7. Example UDF Function Block Configuration
MONITOR PUMP_STATUS
CONTINUOUS
IF (HS101_IN_SERVICE.VAL = ON) AND (HS101.CO = OFF) THEN LOWEST_RUN_TIME = \n    HS101_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_START = 1
ENDIF
IF (HS102_RUN_TIME.VAL < LOWEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS102_IN_SERVICE.VAL = ON) \n    AND (HS101.CO = OFF) THEN LOWEST_RUN_TIME = HS102_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_START = 2
ENDIF
IF (HS103_RUN_TIME.VAL < LOWEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS103_IN_SERVICE.VAL = ON) \n    AND (HS101.CO = OFF) THEN LOWEST_RUN_TIME = HS103_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_START = 3
ENDIF
IF (HS104_RUN_TIME.VAL < LOWEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS104_IN_SERVICE.VAL = ON) \n    AND (HS101.CO = OFF) THEN LOWEST_RUN_TIME = HS104_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_START = 4
ENDIF
IF (HS101.CO = ON) THEN HIGHEST_RUN_TIME = HS101_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_STOP = 1
ENDIF
IF (HS102_RUN_TIME.VAL > HIGHEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS102.CO = ON) THEN \n    HIGHEST_RUN_TIME = HS102_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_STOP = 2
ENDIF
IF (HS103_RUN_TIME.VAL > HIGHEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS103.CO = ON) THEN \n    HIGHEST_RUN_TIME = HS103_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_STOP = 3
ENDIF
IF (HS104_RUN_TIME.VAL > HIGHEST_RUN_TIME) AND (HS104.CO = ON) THEN \n    HIGHEST_RUN_TIME = HS104_RUN_TIME.VAL
    NEXT_PUMP_TO_STOP = 4
ENDIF
ENDSUBR PUMP_STATUS

Figure 3-8. Example Monitor Subroutine for Determining Pump Status

FUNCTION START_PUMP
    DD PUMP
    EXECUTABLE
        IF (PUMP.MODE ISNOT AUTO) THEN SET PUMP.MODE = AUTO
        SKIP CYCLE
        SET PUMP.CO = ON
        WAIT UNTIL PUMP.STS ISNOT WAITING
ENDSUBR START_PUMP

Figure 3-9. Example Function Subroutine to Start a Pump
FUNCTION STOP_PUMP
   DD PUMP
   EXECUTABLE
      IF (PUMP.MODE IS NOT AUTO) THEN SET PUMP.MODE = AUTO
      SKIP CYCLE
   ENDIF
   SET PUMP.CO = OFF
   WAIT UNTIL PUMP.STS IS NOT WAITING
ENDSUBR STOP_PUMP

Figure 3-10. Example Function Subroutine to Stop a Pump

STATE SUBR INITIALIZE START
   NORMAL LOGIC
      SET HS101.TRK = ON
      SET HS102.TRK = ON
      SET HS103.TRK = ON
      SET HS104.TRK = ON
      SET HS101.MODE = AUTO
      SET HS102.MODE = AUTO
      SET HS103.MODE = AUTO
      SET HS104.MODE = AUTO
      IF (HS101_FEEDBACK.VAL = ON) THEN SET HS101.CO = ON
      ENDIF
      IF (HS102_FEEDBACK.VAL = ON) THEN SET HS102.CO = ON
      ENDIF
      IF (HS103_FEEDBACK.VAL = ON) THEN SET HS103.CO = ON
      ENDIF
      IF (HS104_FEEDBACK.VAL = ON) THEN SET HS104.CO = ON
      ENDIF
      NEXT STATE RUN_PUMPS
ENDSUBR INITIALIZE

Figure 3-11. Example State Subroutine for Initializing the Pumps
Figure 3-12. Example State Subroutine for Running the Pumps
INTRODUCTION

Batch 90 and User Defined Function Code (UDF) programming languages, like other programming languages, have certain usage rules. These rules include the use of upper and lower case letters, punctuation, etc. This section presents general usage information and then explains syntax rules, commands, and statements. This section should be used to answer any questions about proper syntax.

SYNTAX

Syntax rules for the commands and statements consist of:

- How to use comments.
- Legal names.
- Command and statement length.
- Reserved words/constants/directives.
- Types of expressions.
- Relational, boolean, and arithmetic operators and expressions.
- Local and global conventions.

Comments

All comments inserted in Batch 90 or UDF programs begin with either { or /* and end with } or */. A comment can cross a line boundary. Comments cannot be nested within other comments.

Example: {This is a comment} or /*This is a comment*/

Names

Legal characters are:

- a through z
- A through Z
- 0 through 9
- _ (underscore)

Example: NAME1
In source code, case (upper/lower) is not significant. In an application, case sensitivity can be enabled.

Batch 90 and UDF languages consider a hyphen a minus sign. Therefore, a hyphen should never be used as a separator between text.

First character must be alphabetic.

Maximum of 32 characters for a name except phase subroutine names which are limited to 16 characters.

**Lines**

One statement per line is permissible. A backslash (\) anywhere in a line causes the remainder of the display line to be ignored and the statement is continued on the next display line.

**Reserved Words/Constants/Directives**

Tables 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, and 4-4 provides listing of reserved words, predefined constants, reference extensions and directives respectively.

**NOTE:** Table entries marked (SP88) apply only when programming in ISA-S88.01-1995 standard terms. Table entries marked (Bailey) apply only when programming in Elsag Bailey traditional terms.

### Table 4-1. Reserved Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>BBUF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACK</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>BBUF ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACQUIRE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>BLINKING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALIAS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>BLK</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALPHA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>BLOCK</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND WAIT</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>BSEQ</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CALL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CAMPAIGN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOL ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CASE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APID</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CASESENSE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APID ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>COMMON</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>CONNECT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATCH</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>CONST</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATCH DATA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>CONST ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4-1. Reserved Words (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ENDDATA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ENDFOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTINUOUS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ENDIIF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTINUOUS LOGIC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ENDSUBR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ENDWHILE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ESTOP INPUT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>EXECUTABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSEQ</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>EXP</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE TIME</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>EXTERNAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE TIME</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>EXTERNAL HOLD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATAEXPT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FAULT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATAEXPT ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FAULT CODE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FAULT LOGIC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD INVERT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FGEN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD NORMAL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FIRST CYCLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUG</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATIONS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FROM</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FUNCTION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIGIT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HIHI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HISTORIAN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY MESSAGE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HISTORIAN BUFFER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HISTORIAN STATUS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO CASE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HOLD</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HOLD LOGIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOL ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HOUR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DONE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJECT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>INCLUDE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELSE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>INPUT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>INTEGRATOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>INVERT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END CASE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END DATA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IS NOT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END FOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ISNOT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END IF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>LAST OPERATION (SP88)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END SUBR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>LAST PHASE (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END WHILE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>LAST SUBR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENDCASE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4-1. Reserved Words (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reserved Word (Bailey)</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Reserved Word (SP88)</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOCATION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>PHASE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOG</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>PHASE NUMBER</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PHASE SUBR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOOP</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>PRIORITY</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PROGRAM</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAINTAIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>PROGRAMID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR ID</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RAMP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR POINT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RBUF</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXPARALLEL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>RBUF ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RCM</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RCM ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RECIPE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RECIPE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINOR ID</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RECIPE ENTRY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINOR POINT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RECIPEID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODULE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>REMSET</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>REMSET ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSDD</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>REPEAT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSDD ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RESERVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT OPERATION (SP88)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>RESET</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT PHASE (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>RESTART</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT STATE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RESTART LOGIC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOLIST</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RESTART POINT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL LOGIC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RESUME</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMALIZE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RESUME AT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RETURN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION (SP88)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR (SP88)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RMC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTIONS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>RMC ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RND</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>RUN INPUT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTPUT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SEND</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCU</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>SET</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SIN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4-1. Reserved Words (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Reserved Word</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIZEOF</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TOLOWER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKIP CYCLE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TOUPPER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMITH</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TPR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMITH ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPEC</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TRUNC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TUNED STATUS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARTUP STATUS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>UDF TYPE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATE SUBR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UNACQUIRE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEP</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>UNCONNECT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEP SUBR (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>UNIT DATA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>UNIT DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>UNIT PARAMETERS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBPHASE (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>UNRESERVE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>UNTIL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>USING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR STATUS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPPRESS</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>VERSION</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXT ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WAIT</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THEN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WAIT FOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WAIT UNTIL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER ARRAY</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WAIT WHILE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WATCH</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WHILE</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO LOWER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO UPPER</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4-2. Reserved Constants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALLOWED</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>GREEN</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FORCED_OFF</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>FORCED_ON</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLUE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>HOLDING</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASCADE</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>INVERT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOSED</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>LOCAL</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPLETE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>MAGENTA</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYAN</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>MANUAL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>MINE</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4-2. Reserved Constants (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>STATE_THREE</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>STATE_TWO</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_FORCED</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>STATE_ZERO</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>STOPPED</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEN</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>UNDEFINED</td>
<td>-∞</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>3.1415</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WAITING</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RED</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WHITE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RATIO</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>YELLOW</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUNNING</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATE.ONE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>YOURS</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4-3. Reserved Reference Extensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.ALM</td>
<td>alarm status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.CV7</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.AMSK</td>
<td>alarm mask</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.CV8</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 8</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.BATCH</td>
<td>batch identifier</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.DAL</td>
<td>deviation alarm</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.BLNK</td>
<td>blink status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.DILK</td>
<td>data export block data interlock status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CAMPAIGN</td>
<td>campaign identifier</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.DIR</td>
<td>controller direction</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CLEN</td>
<td>current string length</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.DTIM</td>
<td>dead time value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CLR</td>
<td>message color</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.FAULT</td>
<td>fault code</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CMDSTRG</td>
<td>CSEQ command string</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.FB1</td>
<td>feedback value 1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CO</td>
<td>control output</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.FB2</td>
<td>feedback value 2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CPEND</td>
<td>CSEQ command pending status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.FBT</td>
<td>feedback target</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CSTS</td>
<td>CSEQ connection status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.FBV</td>
<td>feedback value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV1</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.FF</td>
<td>feedforward value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV2</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.GAIN</td>
<td>gain value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV3</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.HAL</td>
<td>high alarm status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV4</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.HALIM</td>
<td>high alarm limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV5</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.HAMSK</td>
<td>high alarm mask</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.CV6</td>
<td>CSEQ command variable 6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.HLIM</td>
<td>high limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4-3. Reserved Reference Extensions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>B90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.ILK1</td>
<td>interlock 1 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.Q</td>
<td>quality</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ILK2</td>
<td>interlock 2 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.QMSK</td>
<td>quality mask</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ILK3</td>
<td>interlock 3 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.QSTS</td>
<td>CSEQ ownership queue status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ILK4</td>
<td>interlock 4 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.RATE</td>
<td>rate</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ISTR</td>
<td>data export block input string value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.REALM</td>
<td>data export block re-alarm status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.K</td>
<td>gain multiplier</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.RECIPE</td>
<td>recipe identifier</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.KA</td>
<td>derivative lag constant</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.RSTS</td>
<td>reservation status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.KD</td>
<td>derivative rate action</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.RX</td>
<td>ratio index</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.KI</td>
<td>integral reset</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SP</td>
<td>set point</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.KP</td>
<td>proportional reset</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SPM</td>
<td>set point modifier value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LAG</td>
<td>lag value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.STATSTRG</td>
<td>CSEQ status string</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LAL</td>
<td>low alarm status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.STS</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LALIM</td>
<td>low alarm limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV1</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LAMSK</td>
<td>low alarm mask limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV2</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LIM</td>
<td>alarm limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV3</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LLIM</td>
<td>low limit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV4</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LOT</td>
<td>lot identifier</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV5</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.MLEN</td>
<td>maximum string length</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV6</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.MLOCK</td>
<td>data export block mode lock status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV7</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.MODE</td>
<td>mode</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.SV8</td>
<td>CSEQ status variable 8</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.MSG</td>
<td>message number</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TIM</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.NEW</td>
<td>data export block new input string status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TPID</td>
<td>CSEQ target program ID number</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.OPERA-</td>
<td>operation number (SP88)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TPR</td>
<td>CSEQ target partial recipe ID number</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.OSTR</td>
<td>data export block output string</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TRK</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.OSTS</td>
<td>CSEQ ownership status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>.TRUNC</td>
<td>data export block truncated value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.OVR</td>
<td>status override</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TUN</td>
<td>tuning time constant block</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.PERM1</td>
<td>permissive 1 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.TYP</td>
<td>algorithm type</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.PERM2</td>
<td>permissive 2 value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.VAL</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.PHASE</td>
<td>phase number (Bailey)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.WATCH</td>
<td>watch status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.PRO-</td>
<td>CSEQ program ID number</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>.XSTS</td>
<td>execution status</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.PV</td>
<td>process value</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expressions

An expression consists of one or more operands with an operator. Refer to Table 4-5 for a list of operators that apply to both Batch 90 and UDF programming languages.

Table 4-5. Operators and Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relational</th>
<th>Boolean</th>
<th>Arithmetic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>OR</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=&lt;</td>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td></td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>EXP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>LOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS</td>
<td></td>
<td>RND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS NOT</td>
<td></td>
<td>TRUNC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISNOT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notation

Operators and comments require certain kinds of operands. The following notation is used to indicate operand type:

- **exp** Any expression.
- **const** Constant.
- **var** Item of data that can be **written**.

If several operands appear in an expression, they must be distinguished by appending a number (for example, exp1 + exp2).
Relational Operators and Expressions

The logical value **false** is represented by a value greater than or equal to -0.5 and less than 0.5. Otherwise, the value is **true**. The values of relational and boolean expressions are 0.0 for false and 1.0 for true.

<> Usage: \( exp1 <> exp2 \)

True if exp1 is not equal to exp2; otherwise false.

Example: IF (FC501.VAL <> 25.0)

= Usage: \( exp1 = exp2 \)

True if exp1 equals exp2; otherwise false.

Example: WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL = 12.5)

< Usage: \( exp1 < exp2 \)

True if exp1 is less than or equal to exp2; otherwise false.

Example: WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL < LC502.VAL)

\( \leq \) Usage: \( exp1 \leq exp2 \)

\( =< \) Usage: \( exp1 =< exp2 \)

True if exp1 is less than or equal to exp2; otherwise false.

Examples: WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL <= 12.5)  
WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL =< 12.5)

> Usage: \( exp1 > exp2 \)

True if exp1 is greater than exp2; otherwise false.

Example: WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL > 12.0)

\( \geq \) Usage: \( exp1 \geq exp2 \)

\( => \) Usage: \( exp1 => exp2 \)

True if exp1 is greater than or equal to exp2; otherwise false.

Examples: WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL >= LC502.VAL)  
WAIT UNTIL (LC501.VAL => LC502.VAL)

**IS** Usage: \( exp1 IS exp2 \)

True if exp1 (rounded to the nearest integer) is equal to exp2 (rounded to the nearest integer); otherwise false.

Example: IF (LC501.MODE IS AUTO)
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

### IS NOT

**Usage:**

```
exp1 IS NOT exp2
```

True if `exp1` (rounded to nearest integer) is not equal to `exp2` (rounded to nearest integer); otherwise false.

**Examples:**

```
IF (LC501.MODE IS NOT AUTO)
IF (LC501.MODE ISNOT AUTO)
```

---

### VARIABLE TO LIST OR ARRAY COMPARISONS

The following expressions compare the value of a variable with a set of parameters to determine if the variable is included in the set. If the value of the variable is in the set, the result of the comparison is true. Otherwise, the result is false. Constants must be numeric or symbolic and can be mixed within a list. Array elements must also be numeric or symbolic.

```
(var = (const1,const2,....,constn))
(var = array(‘‘))
```

where:

- `var` Name of the variable to be compared to the list or array.
- `constn` Name of the constants to be compared to the variable.
- `array` Name of the array to be compared to the variable.

**Examples:**

```
IF (XMODE = (-i,OPEN,7)) THEN
  SET FC101.MODE = MAN
  SET FC101.CO = CLOSED
ENDIF

IF (X = ARYLIST(‘‘)) THEN
  SET FC101.MODE = AUTO
ENDIF
```

---

### VARIABLE TO LIMITS COMPARISONS

The following expressions compare the value of a variable with high and low limits to determine if the expression is true. The limits can be constants, variables, or expressions.

```
(high>var>low)
(high>=var>low)
(high>=var>=low)
(high>var>=low)
(low<var<high)
(low<=var<high)
```
(low\leq var\leq high)  
(low<var\leq high)

where:

- \textit{var} Name of the variable to be compared to the limits.
- \textit{high} High limit of the comparison.
- \textit{low} Low limit of the comparison.

Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
IF (95>XX>5) THEN  
SET FC101.MODE = MANUAL  
ENDIF

IF (FC101.HLIM>ALM_VAR>FC101.LLIM) THEN  
SET FC101.MODE = MANUAL  
SET SV201.CO = CLOSED  
ENDIF
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{ARRAY COMPARISONS}

The following expression compares the elements in one constant or variable array to the elements of a second constant or variable array. Only if there is an exact match is the expression considered to be true.

\[(\text{array1}(*) = \text{array2}(*))\]

where:

- \textit{array1}, \textit{array2} Name of the declared constant or variable arrays of the same dimensions.

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
IF (OLD_ARRAY(*) = NEW_ARRAY(*)) THEN  
  
ENDIF
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{MINIMUM/MAXIMUM ARRAY VALUES}

The following expressions select the minimum or maximum value from the elements of a constant or variable array.

\begin{verbatim}
MAX array_name(*)  
MIN array_name(*)
\end{verbatim}

where:

- \textit{array_name} Name of the declared constant or variable array.
Examples:  
MAX_VALUE = MAX_ALM_LIMIT(*)
MIN_VALUE = MIN_SP_MIN_VAL(*)

**Boolean Operators and Expressions**

**NOT**
Usage:  
NOT exp

True if exp false; otherwise false.

Example:  
WAIT UNTIL (NOT FC501.Q)

**AND**
Usage:  
exp1 AND exp2

Logical AND of exp1 and exp2. Value is true only if both exp1 and exp2 are true.

Example:  
WAIT UNTIL ((LC501.VAL >= 12.0) AND (LC501.MODE IS AUTO))

**OR**
Usage:  
exp1 OR exp2

Logical OR of exp1 and exp2. Value is true if either exp1 or exp2 is true.

Example:  
WAIT UNTIL ((LC501.VAL >= 12.0) OR (LC501.MODE IS AUTO))

**XOR**
Usage:  
exp1 XOR exp2

Logical EXCLUSIVE OR of exp1 and exp2. Value is true if either exp1 or exp2 is true, but not both.

Example:  
WAIT UNTIL ((LC501.VAL >= 12.0) XOR (LC501.MODE IS AUTO))

The boolean functions AND, OR, and XOR are also supported by arrays. For an AND expression to be true, both arrays must be identical. For an OR expression to be true, at least one element must be identical in both arrays. For an XOR expression to be true, every element is different than that of the other array.

(array1(*) AND array2(*))
(array1(*) OR array2(*))
(array1(*) XOR array2(*))

where:

array1, array2  Name of the declared constant or variable arrays with the same dimensions.
Example: IF (OLD_ARRAY(*) AND NEW_ARRAY(*)) THEN
    •
    •
ENDIF

**Arithmetic Operators and Expressions**

+ Usage: `exp1 + exp2`
  Sum of `exp1` and `exp2`.

- Usage: `exp1 - exp2`
  Difference of `exp1` and `exp2`.

- Usage: `-exp`
  Minus `exp`.

* Usage: `exp1 * exp2`
  Product of `exp1` and `exp2`.

** Usage: `exp1 ** exp2`
  `exp1` to `exp2` power.

/ Usage: `exp1 / exp2`
  Quotient of `exp1` divided by `exp2`.

ABS Usage: `ABS (exp)`
  Absolute value of `exp`.

LOG Usage: `LOG (exp)`
  Natural log of `exp`.

EXP Usage: `EXP (exp1)`
  `e` to `exp1` power.

RND Usage: `RND (exp)`
  Round `exp` to nearest whole number.

TRUNC Usage: `TRUNC (exp)`
  Truncate `exp` to whole number.
Trigonometric functions include:

**SIN**  
Usage: \( \text{SIN} \ (\text{exp}) \)

**COS**  
Usage: \( \text{COS} \ (\text{exp}) \)

**TAN**  
Usage: \( \text{TAN} \ (\text{exp}) \)

where \( \text{exp} \) = value in radians.

---

**Local/Global Conventions**

Data structures (timers, integrators, ramps, etc.) can be declared either in the phase subroutine or in a data section. When declared in a phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutine, the data structure is said to be local. When declared in a data section, the data structure is said to be global.

Local data structures only exist when the phase or state subroutine they are declared within is active. All local data structures are initialized when the phase or state subroutine becomes active. Most data structures (for example, timers, integrators, etc.) have initial values of zero.

Global data structures are initialized on a complete to run transition. Global data is available to all subroutines that follow for reference or command.

Any element (function subroutine, monitor subroutine, variables, function blocks, etc.) must be defined before it can be used in a program statement.

---

**COMMANDS AND STATEMENTS**

The purpose and format of each command and statement is explained in the following text. Also provided are examples and any other pertinent information. Unshaded areas under the language heading indicate languages that are supported. Shaded areas indicate languages that are not supported.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

---

**ACK**

variable

---

**PURPOSE:**

ACK is a built-in, read-only status variable. It indicates the status of the operator acknowledge input to the BSEQ function block.

---

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90

---

**DECLARATION:**

Not required.

---

**REFERENCES:**

ACK value is read by using ACK in an expression.

**ACK**

Status of operator acknowledge input:

- 0 = false (no acknowledge).
- 1 = true (acknowledge has occurred).

**Examples:**

- WAIT UNTIL (ACK)
- WAIT UNTIL (ACK IS TRUE)

---

**REMARKS:**

ACK is latched in the true state by a 0 to 1 transition of the operator acknowledge input. It remains true until reset by a read operation. It is usually desirable to do a dummy read to clear the ACK prior to the actual test for operator acknowledge.

**Examples:**

- X = ACK {Clear ACK}
- WAIT UNTIL ACK {Wait for operator input}

The first statement clears any operator acknowledge that may be left from an earlier time.

**NOTE:** The seventh (n+6) block output of the BSEQ function block is designed to give the programmer a convenient means to reset the ACK pushbutton (typically configured as a remote control memory function block (function code 62)).
ACQUIRE

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**ADVANCED PID**

function block

**PURPOSE:** Advanced PID function blocks (APID, function code 156) provide a mechanism for the analog control of single input single output processes. The program interface to an APID function block provides information about a process and its controller and allows changes of the controller tuning parameters.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BLOCK | name | BLK = const, FC = APID |

**DECLARATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: BLOCK A501, BLK = 250, FC = APID

**REFERENCES:** APID data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get process variable *name.*PV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.PV</td>
<td>Process variable (specification S1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = A501.PV

Get setpoint *name.*SP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.SP</td>
<td>Set point (specification S2).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = A501.SP

Get control output *name.*CO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.CO</td>
<td>Control output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = A501.CO
**Get track flag**  
\textit{name}.TRK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.TRK</td>
<td>Track flag input (specification S4): 0 = tracking, 1 = released.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( X = \text{A501.TRK} \)

**Get K tuning parameter**  
(gain multiplier)

\textit{name}.K

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.K</td>
<td>K value (specification S11).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( X = \text{A501.K} \)

**Get KP tuning parameter**  
(proportional gain)

\textit{name}.KP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.KP</td>
<td>KP value (specification S12).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( X = \text{A501.KP} \)

**Get KI tuning parameter**  
(integral reset)

\textit{name}.KI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.KI</td>
<td>KI value (specification S13).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( X = \text{A501.KI} \)

**Get KD tuning parameter**  
(derivative rate)

\textit{name}.KD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.KD</td>
<td>KD value (specification S14).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( X = \text{A501.KD} \)
Get KA tuning parameter (derivative log constant) \textit{name.KA}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name}</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name.KA}</td>
<td>KA value (specification S15).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \(X = A501.KA\)

Get algorithm type parameter \textit{name.TYP}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name}</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name.TYP}</td>
<td>Algorithm type (specification S18): 0 = classical. 1 = non interacting. 2 = classical with external reset. 3 = manual reset non interacting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \(X = A501.TYP\)

Get setpoint modifier parameter \textit{name.SPM}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name}</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name.SPM}</td>
<td>Set point modifier (specification S20): 0 = normal. 1 = integral only on setpoint change.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \(X = A501.SPM\)

Get directional parameter \textit{name.DIR}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name}</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name.DIR}</td>
<td>Direction (specification S21): 0 = reverse mode error (SP minus PV). 1 = direct mode error (PV minus SP).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \(X = A501.DIR\)
**Advanced PID (continued)**

*Function block*

Get high limit parameter  
\( name.HLIM \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( name )</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( name.HLIM )</td>
<td>High output limit (specification S16).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( X = A501.HLIM \)

Get low limit parameter  
\( name.LLIM \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( name )</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( name.LLIM )</td>
<td>Low output limit (specification S17).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( X = A501.LLIM \)

*Commands:*

The following statements are used to tune the function blocks.

**Set K tuning parameter (gain multiplier)**

\[ \text{SET } name.K = \text{exp} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( name )</td>
<td>Name of the APID block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>K value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( \text{SET A501.K = 2.0} \)

**Set KP tuning parameter (proportional gain)**

\[ \text{SET } name.KP = \text{exp} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( name )</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>KP value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( \text{SET A501.KP = 1.0} \)

**Set KI tuning parameter (integral reset)**

\[ \text{SET } name.KI = \text{exp} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( name )</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>KI value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( \text{SET A501.KI = 3.0} \)
FUNCTION LIBRARY

ADVANCED PID (continued)

function block

Set KD tuning parameter (derivative rate)  

\textbf{SET} \quad \textit{name}.KD = \textit{exp}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{name}</td>
<td>Name of the APID function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{exp}</td>
<td>\textbf{KD} value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \texttt{SET A501.KD = 0.3}
#ALPHA

directive

**PURPOSE:**

The #ALPHA directive signals the compiler that the Batch 90 application contains alphanumeric identifiers for BATCH, CAMPAIGN, LOT, and RECIPE variables. These identifiers can be up to 16 characters in length. Valid alphanumeric characters are zero through nine, A through Z, and underscores.

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90  UDF

**FORMAT:**

Example:

```plaintext
#TITLE "EXAMPLE USING ALPHANUMERIC IDENTIFIERS"
#DEBUG LEVEL = 4
#DESCRIPTOR "ALPHA ID PROGR"
#ALPHA
```

**REMARKS:**

Usage of alphanumeric identifiers requires a change in function block configurations. REMSET function blocks, typically used as input blocks to BSEQ and BHIST function blocks, are replaced with DATAEXPT function blocks. Figure A-3 shows an example function block configuration.

Usage of at least one alphanumeric BATCH, CAMPAIGN, LOT, and RECIPE identifier within a project dictates that all BATCH, CAMPAIGN, LOT, and RECIPE identifiers within the project be alphanumeric. Numeric and alphanumeric identifiers can not be used in the same project.

Alphanumeric identifiers for BATCH, CAMPAIGN, LOT, and RECIPE require MFP module firmware revision F.2 or later.
**PURPOSE:**
The analog exception report (AOL, function code 30) transmits an analog value and its attributes (quality and alarm) via the INFI-NET to operator consoles and other nodes.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**
Each AOL function block to be used by a batch program must be declared as follows:

**NOTE:** Input S1 of the AOL function block must be set to 2. Otherwise, batch program commands will be ignored.

**BLOCK**

\[
\text{name} \text{. BLK} = \text{const}, \text{ FC } = \text{AOL} \ [\text{, WATCH}] 
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATCH (Batch 90 only)</td>
<td>If WATCH is specified, the initial AOL function block watch status is set to on by the Batch Historian on program start-up. If WATCH is not specified, the initial watch status is off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:**
AOL data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get value**

\[
\text{name.VAL} 
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.VAL</td>
<td>Current value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

\[
\text{X AOL501.VAL} 
\]

**Get quality**

\[
\text{name.Q} 
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| name.Q     | Current quality:  
0 = good. 
1 = bad. |

**Example:**

\[
\text{X AOL501.Q} 
\]
**Get high alarm status**  
`name.HAL`  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>name.HAL</code></td>
<td>Current high alarm status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = not high alarm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = high alarm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
X AOL501.HAL

**Get low alarm status**  
`name.LAL`  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>name.LAL</code></td>
<td>Current low alarm status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = not low alarm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = low alarm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
X AOL501.LAL

**Get quality mask**  
`name.QMSK`  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>name.QMSK</code></td>
<td>Current quality mask:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = forced 0 (good).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = forced 1 (bad).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = not forced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
X AOL501.QMSK

**Get high alarm mask**  
`name.HAMSK`  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>name.HAMSK</code></td>
<td>Current high alarm mask:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = forced 0 (good).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = forced 1 (bad).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = not forced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
X AOL501.HAMSK
Get low alarm mask \( \text{name}.\text{LAMSK} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \text{name}.\text{LAMSK} | Current low alarm mask:  

0 = forced 0 (not low).  
1 = forced 1 (low).  
2 = not forced. |

Example: X AOL501.LAMSK

Get high alarm limit \( \text{name}.\text{HALIM} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}.\text{HALIM}</td>
<td>Current high alarm limit (specification S5).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X AOL501.HALIM

Get low alarm limit \( \text{name}.\text{LALIM} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}.\text{LALIM}</td>
<td>Current low alarm limit (specification S6).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X AOL501.LALIM

Commands:

The following statements are used to control AOL function blocks:

Set value \( \text{SET} \ \text{name}.\text{VAL} = \text{exp} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{name}</td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{exp}</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET AOL501.VAL = 32.0
## ANALOG EXCEPTION REPORT

**function block**

### Set quality mask

**SET** `name.QMSK = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `exp`     | Quality mask:  
0 = forced 0 (good).  
1 = forced 1 (bad).  
2 = not forced. |

**Examples:**

- SET AOL501.QMSK = 0
- SET AOL501.QMSK = FORCED_OFF

### Set high alarm mask

**SET** `name.HAMSK = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `exp`     | High alarm mask:  
0 = forced 0 (no alarm).  
1 = forced 1 (alarm).  
2 = not forced. |

**Examples:**

- SET AOL501.HAMSK = 0
- SET AOL501.HAMSK = FORCED_OFF

### Set low alarm mask

**SET** `name.LAMSK = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `exp`     | Low alarm mask:  
0 = forced 0 (no alarm).  
1 = forced 1 (alarm).  
2 = not forced. |

**Examples:**

- SET AOL501.LAMSK = 0
- SET AOL501.LAMSK = FORCED_OFF

### Set watch status

(Statistics 90 only)

**SET** `name.WATCH = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Name of the AOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `name.WATCH` | Batch Historian watch status:  
0 = off.  
1 = on. |

**Example:**

- SET AOL501.WATCH = ON
Refer to BLOCK ARRAY, CONST ARRAY, CONST STRING ARRAY, VAR ARRAY, and VAR STRING ARRAY.
**PURPOSE:**
This statement assigns a value to a variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BATCH 90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

\[ var = \text{exp} \]

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>var</td>
<td>Name of variable where value is to be stored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Expression to be evaluated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

\[ x = 123.0 \]
\[ x = y + z + 123.0 \]
\[ x = (\text{FT101.VAL} + \text{FT102.VAL}) / 2.0 \]
\[ \text{STATUS} = \text{FT101.STS} \]

**REMARKS:**
Refer to **VAR ARRAY** for more information.
**PURPOSE:** BATCH is a built-in status variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** None required.

**REFERENCES:** BATCH ID is read by using BATCH in an expression.

- **Examples:**
  - PRODUCT_NO = BATCH + 1
  - SUBPROD_ID_NO = BATCH

**REMARKS:**

The Batch 90 language includes three built-in variables (CAMPAIGN, BATCH and LOT). These variables may be used by the Batch Historian function block for record keeping or by the common sequence function block for controlling resource allocation. Refer to CAMPAIGN and LOT for more information.
**BATCH DATA**

statement

**PURPOSE:**
This is the first statement of a batch data section within a batch program. This section defines global data, function codes, and symbols. All declarations in the batch data section are global since they can be referenced by all following phase, function, and monitor subroutines in the batch program.

There may be more than one batch data section in a program. The second batch data section is often used to declare global monitors. Since global monitor subroutines must be defined in the program before they are declared, the second batch data section should appear after the monitor subroutine definitions.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

```
BATCH DATA
  type1 name1
  type2 name2
  ...
  END DATA
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Any one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>block ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FGEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INTEGRATOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MONITOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TIMER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FUNCTION LIBRARY

Example: BATCH DATA

```
VAR SUM

CONST NOT_OPEN = 0

BLOCK DI02A, BLK = 100, FC = 84, \
OUT (0) = FV501, OUT (1) = FV501

BLOCK FV501, BLK = 205, FC = DD

END DATA
```

REMARKS:

For function block declaration details, refer to:

- AOL: Analog exception report
- APID: Advanced PID
- BBUF: Boolean data buffer
- CS: Control station
- CSEQ: Common sequence
- DATAEXPT: User defined data export
- DOL: Digital exception report
- DD: Device driver
- MSDD: Multi-state device driver
- RBUF: Real data buffer
- RCM: Remote control memory
- REMSET: Remote manual set constant
- RMC: Remote motor control
- SMITH: Smith block
- TEXT: Text

Other function codes may be referenced by their function code number.

Batch data is **permanent**: the values remain from one phase subroutine to the next. Batch data is initialized when a batch program is run for the first time (that is, on the transition from batch complete to running).

The active data structures (for example, timers and monitor calls) execute independently of the active phase subroutine. They will execute even while the active phase subroutine is holding. Active data structures declared in a batch data section are sometimes referred to as being global. Their values are initialized to zero at the start of the batch sequence. They are never initialized again unless explicitly done so through a statement such as RESET.
**PURPOSE:** The following reference extensions will retrieve the recipe, phase, campaign, batch, and lot ID and the execution status of a batch sequence function block.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BLOCK  | bseqx | BLK = const, FC = BSEQ |

**DECLARATION:** Each BSEQ function block to be used by a batch program must be declared as follows:

**NOTE:** Input S1 of the AOL function block must be set to 2. Otherwise, batch program commands will be ignored.

**REFERENCES:**

BSEQ data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get phase ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bseqx, PHASE</td>
<td>Number of the phase subroutine being executed by the BSEQ function block declared by bseqx.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Get execution status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bseqx, XSTS</td>
<td>Execution status of the BSEQ function block declared by bseqx: -1 = batch inactive (complete). 0 = holding. 1 = running (normal logic active). 2 = hold (hold logic active). 3 = fault (fault logic active). 4 = restart (restart logic active).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

- **Example:** BLOCK BSEQ501, BLK = 240, FC = BSEQ
- **Example:** X = BSEQ501.PHASE
- **Example:** X = BSEQ501.XSTS
Refer to DATA BUFFER.
BLOCK ARRAY

data structure

**PURPOSE:**
A block array is a group of previously defined function blocks of the same function code type, organized into an array. An array may have 1, 2, or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole has a name. An individual block (element) of an array is identified by an array index which specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**
The following statements are used to declare (in data sections) block arrays.

- **for one dimensional array**
  
  \[
  \text{type ARRAY name (low:high1) (list)}
  \]

- **for two dimensional array**
  
  \[
  \text{type ARRAY name (low:high1, low:high2) (list)}
  \]

- **for three dimensional array**
  
  \[
  \text{type ARRAY name (low:high1, low:high2, low:high3) (list)}
  \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **type**  | Any one of the following:  
  - AOL: Analog output over the loop.  
  - BBUF: Boolean buffer.  
  - CS: Control station.  
  - DATAEXPT: Data export.  
  - DD: Device driver.  
  - DOL: Digital output over the loop.  
  - MSDD: Multi-state device driver.  
  - RBUF: Real buffer.  
  - RCM: Remote control memory.  
  - REMSET: Remote manual set constant.  
  - RMC: Remote motor control block.  
  - TEXT: Text selector. |
| **name**   | Name of the array. |
| **low**    | Lowest subscript value must be 0 or 1. For second and third dimensional arrays, the lowest subscript is optional but must match the value from the first dimension. |
| **highN**  | Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. This must a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16K. |
Examples:

In the following examples, the names included in the list correspond to names assigned to function block declarations in the data.

TEXT ARRAY TXT_MSGS (1:5) \\
(LINE1, LINE2, LINE3, LINE4, LINE5)

CS ARRAY CONTROL_VLV (1:3, 1:2) \\
(FIC110, PIC118, TIC122, \\
FIC207, PIC209, TIC225)

DD ARRAY REACTOR_FUNCTION_BLOCKS (1:4, 3, 2) \\
(PV52, PV58, PV60, PV66, \\
TV41, TV42, TV71, TV72, \\
FV53, FV57, FV63, FV67, \\
PV152, PV158, PV160, PV166, \\
TV141, TV142, TV171, TV172, \\
FV153, FV157, FV163, FV167)

REFERENCE:

Element of an array

[for one dimensional array]
name (exp1) .ref ext

[for two dimensional array]
name (exp1, exp2) .ref ext

[for three dimensional array]
name (exp1, exp2, exp3) .ref ext

Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expn</td>
<td>Value of the nth subscript. Subscript boundary checking will be performed as is for all other array types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ref ext</td>
<td>Valid reference extension for the function block type of the array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

F1_PV = CONTROL_VLV (1, 1) .PV
F1_TGT = CONTROL_VLV (1, 1) .SP
T2_CO = CONTROL_VLV (3, 2) .CO
SOV_MODE = REACTOR_FUNCTION_BLOCKS (4, 1, 2) .MODE
DISPLAY MESSAGE 1234 COLOR GREEN USING TXT_MSGS(I)
In many operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array of function blocks will be referenced as follows:

\[ \text{name} \ [\ .\text{ref ext} ] \]

- or -

\[ \text{name} \ (\ldots) \ [\ .\text{ref ext} ] \]

The first form (just the name) is used when an array is passed as an argument to a function or monitor subroutine. The second form is used in other whole array operations.

**Examples:**
- CALL CLEAR_MSGS (TXT_MSGS1)
- TARGETS (*, *) = CONTROL_VLVS (*, *) .SP
- PROCESS_VARIABLES (*, *) = CONTROL_VLVS (*, *) .PV

**COMMANDS:**

**Assign (write a value to a block array element)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(*...)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions (that is, (<em>), (</em>, <em>), (</em>, *, *)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ref ext</td>
<td>Valid reference extension for the function block type of the array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

{for one dimensional array}

\[ \text{SET} \ \text{name} \ (\text{exp1}) \ .\text{ref ext} = \text{exp} \]

{for two dimensional array}

\[ \text{SET} \ \text{name} \ (\text{exp1}, \text{exp2}) \ .\text{ref ext} = \text{exp} \]

{for three dimensional array}

\[ \text{SET} \ \text{name} \ (\text{exp1}, \text{exp2}, \text{exp3}) \ .\text{ref ext} = \text{exp} \]
Examples:  
SET CONTROL_VLVS (1, 1) .SP = 0  
SET REACTOR_FUNCTION_BLOCKS (1, 2, 1) .MODE = AUTO  
SET INDICATORS (2, 2, 2) .VAL = 1

Entire array  
Command references to block arrays may be made to the array as a whole. Thus, an entire array of function blocks is written to:

**SET** name (*...) .ref ext = exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(*...)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.ref ext</td>
<td>A valid reference extension for the function block type of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Command value for the reference extension of the element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SET CONTROL_VLVS (*, *) .SP = 0  
SET REACTOR_FUNCTION_BLOCKS (1, *, *).MODE = AUTO  
SET INDICATORS (1, *, *) .VAL = 1.0

**NOTE:** Only function blocks explicitly defined in data sections may be included in an array (that is, no unit procedure dependent function blocks are allowed).

Elements within the array are static. Once defined in the list of the array declaration, the program is not able to dynamically change which function blocks are included in the array.

Subscript range checking is done by the compiler if all of the subscripts of an array are constants. Range checking is always performed during program execution. Each time an array element is read, the subscript values are checked. If a subscript value is out of bounds, some error action is taken. If the error occurs during any mode other than fault mode (for example, normal mode), the normal flow of control is aborted. The mode is changed to fault and control is transferred to fault logic with the system generated fault code of -17 indicating the error in array subscript boundary. If the error occurs during fault mode, flow of control is not aborted. A value of zero is returned for the incorrectly subscribed array element.
BREAK

statement

**PURPOSE:** This statement terminates the smallest enclosing loop structure (for example, REPEAT-UNTIL, WHILE-ENDWHILE, DO CASE or FOR LOOP).

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:** BREAK

**REMARKS:** When this statement is executed, control passes to the statement following the terminated loop (for example, following an UNTIL, ENDWHILE, END CASE, or FOR LOOP).

**Example:**

```
REPEAT
  IF (TIMER1.VAL > 30.0) BREAK
  IF (TIMER2.VAL > 10.0) BREAK
UNTIL (A > 10)
```

The BREAK statement will not break out of an IF (...) THEN (...) ELSE (...) statement, because this IF statement is not classified as a looping structure.
CALL

Refer to FUNCTION.
**CAMPAIGN**

variable

**PURPOSE:**

CAMPAIGN is a built-in status variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATION:**

None required

**REFERENCES:**

CAMPAIGN ID is read by using CAMPAIGN in an expression.

Example:

TRAIN_NO = CAMPAIGN  
PROD_ID_NO = CAMPAIGN + 1000

**REMARKS:**

The Batch 90 language includes three built-in variables (BATCH, CAMPAIGN, and LOT). These variables may be used by the BSEQ function block for record keeping or by the CSEQ function block for controlling resource allocation. Refer to **BATCH** and **LOT** statements for more information.
**PURPOSE:** This structure organizes statements into one or more cases (a block of statements with an identifier) and a switch to select one of the cases for execution.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

```plaintext
DO CASE exp
 CASE id_list
     statement 1a
     ...
     statement 1n
 CASE id_list2
     statement 2a
     ...
     statement 2n
 [other]
     statement
     statement
END CASE
```

**NOTES:**
1. The "other" case specification must be the last case specified.
2. The switch value is rounded to the nearest integer value prior to evaluation.
3. The maximum number of cases that can be specified is 500.

**Parameter** | **Description**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>exp</code></td>
<td>This value selects the case to be executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>id_list</code></td>
<td>Each case is identified by its id_list. An id_list may be single number (for example, 3), a number range (for example, 5 TO 10), or a combination of numbers and ranges (for example, 3, 5 TO 10). All ranges are inclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>other</code></td>
<td>Identifies the case to be executed when none of the previous id_lists include the switch value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: DO CASE X
   CASE 1
     SET TIC220.SP = 55
     SET TIC221.SP = 45
   CASE 4 TO 6, 8
     SET TIC220.SP = 45
     SET TIC221.SP = 55
   OTHER
     SET TIC220.SP = 50
     SET TIC221.SP = 50
END CASE

REMARKS:
When the DO CASE statement is executed, the cases are searched in order (starting from the top) for the first id_list that contains the switch value. If a match is found, then the block of statements for that case is executed, and control then passes to the statement following the END CASE.

Id_lists may be overlapping (although the compiler will generate a warning message). The first case that matches the switch is the one executed. For example, the cases:

   CASE 5
   CASE 1 TO 10

are equivalent to the cases:

   CASE 5
   CASE 1 TO 4, 6 TO 10

Execution of a BREAK statement within a case passes control to the statement following the END CASE.

CASE statements may be nested.
#CASESENSE

directive

**PURPOSE:** This compiler directive enables or disables case sensitivity for string comparison operations only.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90   UDF
```

**FORMAT:**

```
#CASESENSE = n
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>Case sense comparison options: 0 = all characters compared as upper case, 1 = characters compared as they exist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:** The default case sensitivity is disabled (set to zero). Once enabled, the sensitivity remains enabled until another directive is encountered. This directive may be included in any type of subroutine but must be the first characters of the first line of the source program. This directive does not effect write operations to the output string of export string function blocks.
**CASE CONVERSION**

*command*

**PURPOSE:**
This command converts the case of characters within a variable string. The result of the conversion is stored in the original string variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BATCH 90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

- **TO UPPER** *(vstrname)*
- or -

**TO LOWER** *(vstrname)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of VAR STRING data only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Variable strings associated with data export and CSEQ function blocks can not be directly effected by TO UPPER or TO LOWER commands.

**Examples:**

- TO UPPER (PROMPT_MSG)  {converts to upper case}
- TO LOWER (REQUIRED_ACTION)  {converts to lower case}
**PURPOSE:**

The common sequence (CSEQ) function block provides the communication interface with batch sequence (BSEQ) function blocks. This interface is established when one batch sequence function block (the client program) connects to a second batch sequence function block (the server program) via a CSEQ function block attached to the server BSEQ function block.

Once the client program has established the connection, the server program sends the following status information about the server to the client:

- Connection status.
- Reservation status.
- Ownership status.
- Control mode (operator, remote).
- Program execution status (inactive, running, holding).
- Unit recipe ID.
- Operation number.
- Fault code.
- Program ID number.
- Campaign, batch and lot identifiers.
- Status variables (.SV1 through .SV8).
- Status strings (.STSSTRG).

This information is available to all connected client programs by references to the server programs CSEQ name as identified in the CSEQ function block declaration.

For a client program to gain control of a server program, the client program must acquire ownership of the server. The client program that has acquired ownership of the server may perform the following operations on the server via commands to the CSEQ function block.

- Select the unit recipe, operation and start/restart for the program.
- Select the program to execute.
- Put the program into hold logic.
- Send command variables to the CSEQ function block (.CV1 through .CV8).
- Send command strings (.CMDSTRG) to the CSEQ function block.
- Unacquire (release ownership of) the CSEQ function block.
The client server relationship between programs, with the client capable of controlling the server programs execution, is realized with the use of the CSEQ function block. One program may be the owner (client) of a second program or server, as well as a server to a third program. Thus, production trains contain batch units linked via CSEQ function blocks. Refer to Figure 4-1 for an example production train.

![Example Production Train Diagram](image_url)

**Figure 4-1. Example Production Train**

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**

A CSEQ function block must be declared in a batch data, unit data, or unit parameter section of the program before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The CSEQ reserve allow, ownership allow, and control mode inputs affect what access is given to connected client programs. Reserve allow and ownership allow inputs determine whether the server is eligible to grant reserve and acquire requests. The control mode input determines the source of program execution control for the server. In operator mode, the unit recipe, operation, and run/hold inputs from the BSEQ function block control the program execution. In operator mode, reservation and ownership requests may be granted. However, control of program execution remains in the operators control until the control mode is changed to remote. In remote mode, the owner (a client program that has acquired ownership) controls program execution.
FUNCTION LIBRARY

COMMON SEQUENCE (continued)

data structure

Declaration in batch data

**BLOCK** `cseqname, BLK = const1, FC = CSEQ \ [RING = const2,] [PCU = const3,] [MODULE = const4,] \ [TPR = const5,] [PROGRAM = const6]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const1</code></td>
<td>Block address of the BSEQ function block attached to the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const2</code></td>
<td>Loop address (0 = this loop).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const3</code></td>
<td>Process control unit address (0 = this process control unit).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const4</code></td>
<td>Module address (0 = this module).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const5</code></td>
<td>Target partial unit recipe number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const6</code></td>
<td>Target program ID number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** If not specified by the declaration, the default values for loop, PCU, and module address will be assigned the value of zero.

**REFERENCES:**

When the following references are operative from the client programs side of the connection, `cseqname` is the name assigned to the CSEQ data structure in the clients program that represents the server. Other references are operative from the server programs side of the connection. In these cases, `cseqname` is THIS (that is, THIS refers to itself).

Get connection status `cseqname.CSTS`

- or -

**THIS.CSTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname.CSTS</code></td>
<td>Connection status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-1 = failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = not connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥2 = trying to connect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>THIS.CSTS</strong></td>
<td>Number of active connections currently being supported by the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

WAIT WHILE (FEED_TANK.CSTS = WAITING)
IF (FEED_TANK.CSTS = FAILED) FAULT1
IF (THIS.CSTS < 1) NEXT OPERATION 1
WAIT UNTIL (THIS.CSTS > 1)
**Get reserved status**  
`cseqname.RSTS`

- or -

**THIS.RSTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `cseqname.RSTS` | Reserved status:  
1 = reservation not allowed.  
0 = not reserved.  
1 = reserved (production ID qualify).  
2 = reserved (production ID does not qualify). |
| **THIS.RSTS** | Reserved status:  
-1 = reservation not allowed.  
0 = not reserved.  
1 = reserved. |

**Examples:**  
IF (DELIVERY_HEADER.RSTS IS UNRESOLVED) THEN...  
IF (DELIVERY_HEADER.RSTS IS ANOTHER) THEN...  
IF (THIS.RSTS IS RESERVED) THEN...  
IF (THIS.RSTS IS NOT_ALLOWED) THEN...

**Get ownership status**  
`cseqname.OSTS`

- or -

**THIS.OSTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `cseqname.OSTS` | Ownership status:  
-1 = ownership not allowed.  
0 = not owned.  
1 = owned by me.  
2 = owned by another. |
| **THIS.OSTS** | Ownership status:  
-1 = ownership not allowed.  
0 = not owned.  
1 = owned. |

**Examples:**  
IF (PREP_TANK.OSTS = ANOTHER THEN...  
WAIT UNTIL (THIS.OSTS IS OWNED)  
IF (THIS.OSTS IS NOT_ALLOWED) THEN...  
WAIT UNTIL (THIS.OSTS IS OWNED)
Get ownership queue status from a client program

\[ \text{cseqname.QSTS} \]
- or -
\[ \text{THIS.QSTS} \]

**Parameter** | **Description**
---|---
\[ \text{cseqname} \] | Name of the CSEQ function block.
\[ \text{cseqname.QSTS} \] | Ownership queue status:
-1 = ownership queue off and erased.
0 = ownership queue off.
1 = ownership queue on.
\[ \text{THIS.QSTS} \] | Ownership queue status:
-1 = ownership queue off and erased.
0 = ownership queue off.
1 = ownership queue on.

Examples:
- WAIT UNTIL (HEADER.QSTS IS ON)
- IF (HEADER.QSTS IS OFF) UNCONNECT HEADER
- REPEAT ... UNTIL (THIS.QSTS IS ON)
- IF (THIS.QSTS = FLUSHED) SET FLAGS.VAL = OFF

Get control mode

\[ \text{cseqname.MO} \]

**Parameter** | **Description**
---|---
\[ \text{cseqname} \] | Name of the CSEQ function block.
\[ \text{cseqname.MO} \] | Control mode:
0 = operator (manual).
1 = remote (auto).

**REMARKS:**

In the operator mode, the server program execution is controlled normally. In the remote mode, inputs to the BSEQ function block are disabled. Control of these items is passed to the CSEQ function block which responds to commands received from the client program that owns the server. The emergency stop and acknowledge inputs are active in both modes.

Examples:
- IF (TANK_1.MO IS OPERATOR) CONNECT TANK_2
- WAIT UNTIL (COOLING_SYS.MO IS REMOTE)
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**COMMON SEQUENCE (continued)**

data structure

---

Get program execute status \( cseqname.XSTS \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname )</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( cseqname.XSTS \) | Program status:  
  -1 = batch inactive (complete).  
  0 = holding.  
  1 = running (normal logic active).  
  2 = hold (hold logic active).  
  3 = fault (fault logic active).  
  4 = restart (restart logic active). |

Examples:

If (REACTOR.XSTS <> INACTIVE) THEN  
WAIT UNTIL (REACTOR.XSTS IS RUNNING)

---

Get fault code \( cseqname.FAULT \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname )</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname.FAULT )</td>
<td>Fault code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

If (HEADER.FAULT > 0) SET XFER_ALARM.VAL = ON  
If (FEED_TANK.FAULT = -10) RECIPE_ERROR = ON

---

Get operation number \( cseqname.OPERATION \)  
[ISA-S88.01-1995 compliant terminology]

- or -

\( cseqname.PHASE \)  
[Elsag Bailey traditional terminology]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname )</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname.OPERATION )</td>
<td>Operation number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( cseqname.PHASE )</td>
<td>Phase number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

WAIT UNTIL (REACTOR.OPERATION > 1)  
If (TANK.OPERATION < 3) THEN

**REMARKS:**

The data type for the BATCH, CAMPAIGN, LOT, and RECIPE identifiers depends on the identifier mode. Default mode is numeric. Using the #ALPHA directive changes the numeric identifiers to 16 character alphanumeric character strings.
Get campaign identifier  

\[ \text{cseqname.CAMPAIGN} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.CAMPAIGN</td>
<td>Campaign identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
IF (STRG_TANK.CAMPAIGN <> CAMPAIGN) THEN...
IF (HEADER.CAMPAIGN > 0) THEN...

Get batch identifier  

\[ \text{cseqname.BATCH} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.BATCH</td>
<td>Batch identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
IF (STRG_TANK.BATCH <> BATCH) BNUM_MATCH = OFF
IF (REACTOR.BATCH <> STRG_TANK.BATCH) THEN...

Get lot identifier  

\[ \text{cseqname.LOT} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.LOT</td>
<td>Lot identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
IF (STRG_TANK.LOT <> LOG) LNUM_MATCH = OFF
IF (HEADER.LOT < TANK.LOT) THEN...

Get unit recipe identifier  

\[ \text{cseqname.RECIPE} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.RECIPE</td>
<td>Unit recipe identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARKS:  
The unit procedure number is the number of the unit procedure that is currently being run by the server program.

Examples:  
IF (REACTOR.RECIPE <> REACTOR_UNIT_PROCEDURE_NO) THEN
IF (PREP_TANK.RECIPE <> INGRED_UNIT_PROCEDURE_NO) THEN

Get target partial unit recipe number  

\[ \text{cseqname.TPR} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.TPR</td>
<td>Unit recipe identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**COMMON SEQUENCE** (continued)

**data structure**

**REMARKS:**

The target partial unit recipe identifier is the unit recipe identifier supplied by the owners unit recipe or in the declaration, along with the CSEQ function block location. The primary use for this value is to select the unit recipe in the start command.

Examples:

IF (PREP_TANK.TPR = PREP_TANK.RECIPE) THEN...
IF (REACTOR.TPR = <> PRODUCT_ID_NO) THEN...

Get program ID number  
`cseqname.PROGRAM`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname.PROGRAM</code></td>
<td>Program ID number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

The program ID number is the ID number of the program that is currently being run by the server program.

Examples:

IF (DIGESTER.PROGRAM <> VAPOR_PHASE) THEN...
IF (PREP_TANK.PROGRAM <> INGRED_TYPE) THEN...

Get target program ID number  
`cseqname.TPID`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname.TPID</code></td>
<td>Target program ID number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

The `cseqname.TPID` is the program ID number supplied by the owners unit procedure or in the declaration, along with the CSEQ function blocks location. The primary use for this value is to select the program to be executed by the CSEQ function block in the start command.

Examples:

IF (DIGESTER.PROGRAM <> DIGESTER.TPID) THEN...
IF (PREP_TANK.TPID <> PREP_TANK.PROGRAM) THEN...

Get status variable  
`cseqname.SVn`

- or -

`THIS.SVn`
Status variables provide a convenient way for a server program to send status data to its owner and other client programs. The server program writes to a status variable using the reference to itself (THIS). A client program reads a status variable using the name of the server defined in the declaration of the CSEQ function block.

Examples:
- COOLING_STS = COOLING_SYS.SV2
- BLOW_TIME = DIGESTER.SV8
- PARTIAL_STEP_NO = THIS.SV5

### Get status string variable

- Get status string variable
  - `cseqname.STATSTRG`
  - OR -
  - `THIS.STATSTRG`

### Remarks:

Status string variables provide a convenient way for a server program to send alphanumeric data to its owner and other client programs. The server program writes to the status string variable using the reference to itself (THIS). A client program reads the status string variable using the name of the server defined in the declaration of the CSEQ function block.

Example:
- REACTOR_STATE = REACTOR_EXE.STATSTRG
- STRING_VAR = FEED_TANK.STATSTRG

### Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>n</code></td>
<td>Number of status variable (1 - 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname.SVn</code></td>
<td>Value of status variable <code>n</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>THIS.SVn</code></td>
<td>Value of status variable <code>n</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname.STATSTRG</code></td>
<td>Value of the status string variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>THIS.STATSTRG</code></td>
<td>Value of the status string variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Get command variable  

\[ cseqname.CV_n \]

- or -

\[ THIS.CV_n \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>Number of command variable (1 - 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.CV_n</td>
<td>Target value of command variable ( n ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THIS.CV_n</td>
<td>Target value of command variable ( n ).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**
The actual value of a server command variable is equal to the target value of the owner. If the client is not the owner, its target values are UNDEFINED.

Examples (client):
- FIQ1025.VAL = COOLING_SYS.CV6
- TGT_BLOW_TIME = DIGESTER.CV4

Examples (server):
- SEQ_STEP_CMD = THIS.CV3
- SET STEP_NO_IND.VAL = THIS.CV7

Get command string variable  

\[ cseqname.CMDSTRG \]

- or -

\[ THIS.CMDSTRG \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cseqname.CMDSTRG</td>
<td>Target value of the command string variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THIS.CMDSTRG</td>
<td>Actual value of the command string variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**
The actual value of a server command variable is equal to the target value of the owner. If the client is not the owner, its target values are UNDEFINED.

Example (client):
- RX_STRING = REACTOR_EXEC.CMDSTRG
- STRINGX = FEED_TANK.CMDSTRG

Example (server):
- OP_MSG = THIS.CMDSTRG
- STRINGY = THIS.CMDSTRG
Get command pending status  
\textit{\texttt{cseqname.CPEND}}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{\texttt{cseqname}}</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \textit{\texttt{cseqname.CPEND}} | Value of command pending status:  
0 = not waiting (good).  
1 = waiting. |

**REMARKS:**
This form of the reference is operative only from a client program. This reference is intended to give the owner program a means to verify that CSEQ commands have actually been received by the server programs CSEQ function block. The CSEQ function code will not guarantee the synchronous receipt of the sequential CSEQ commands.

**Example:**
\begin{verbatim}
WAIT WHILE (FEED_TANK.CPEND IS WAITING)  
WAIT UNTIL (COOLING_SYS.CPEND <> WAITING)
\end{verbatim}

**COMMANDS:**
Common sequence commands are executed in a manner similar to function block commands. Commands do not communicate directly with the CSEQ function block. The CSEQ command is buffered in the CSEQ data structure and the program goes on to the next statement. When the client program reaches a wait state, the command is sent from the CSEQ data structure to the servers CSEQ function block. There are important consequences to this approach:

1. CSEQ commands are allowed in all program logic sections (that is, normal, continuous, fault, etc.).

2. There is a time delay between the issuance of a command by the client and action taken by the server.

3. If a command is pending (a command statement has been issued but the command has not been acted upon) and a counteracting command is executed, the second command may overwrite the first. For example, if a hold command is followed too quickly by a start command, the CSEQ function block will see only the start command. As another example, if a command variable update is followed too quickly by another update of the same command variable, the first value is lost. In some cases, it may be necessary for the program to control the order in which commands take affect. This can be accomplished by checking the appropriate status reference between commands.
COMMON SEQUENCE (continued)

data structure

Example:  HOLD FILL_TANK
           WAIT UNTIL (FILL_TANK.XSTS = WAITING)
           START FILL_TANK
           WAIT UNTIL (FILL_TANK.XSTS = RUNNING)

Connect to a CSEQ  CONNECT  cseqname

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  CONNECT FEED_TANK
            CONNECT REACTOR

REMARKS:  This command causes a client program to establish a connection with the specified server CSEQ function block.

If a connection cannot be established or if an established connection fails, the connection status indicates failed. A program should monitor all of its connections and take appropriate action in case of a failure.

Unconnect from a CSEQ  UNCONNECT  cseqname

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  UNCONNECT REACTOR
            UNCONNECT FEED_TANK

REMARKS:  This command causes the client program to unconnect from the specified server CSEQ function block.

NOTES:  A connected client program will be unconnected from a server CSEQ function block if the following occurs:
1.  The connected program terminates or its module leaves execute mode.
2.  The module containing the CSEQ function block leaves execute mode.
3.  The communication system fails.

When a program becomes unconnected, all pending commands are lost.
Acquire ownership of a CSEQ

**ACQUIRE** cseqname CAMPAIGN = exp1, BATCH = exp2, LOT = exp3, [PRIORITY = exp4] [OPTIONS = exp5]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1 through exp3</td>
<td>Campaign, batch and lot identifiers to be passed through to the CSEQ function block. By use of the reserved words MINE and YOURS, the client program may specify the CSEQ function block to use values associated with the client program (MINE) or the server program (YOURS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp4</td>
<td>Optional request priority level (1 through 127). One is the highest priority and 127 is the lowest. If not specified, the request is given a priority of 127. A priority value of -1 specifies a one time request (not queued).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp5</td>
<td>Specifies the execution status of the CSEQ function block that is required before ownership is granted. 0 = server program status must be complete. 1 = server program status may be complete, running or holding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

When a CSEQ function block receives an acquire request and the CSEQ function block is eligible to be acquired and the request is qualified, it will grant the request. If the CSEQ function block is not eligible or the request is not qualified, the request will either queued or discarded (one time).

A common sequence is eligible to be acquired if:

1. The CSEQ function block is not owned.
   
   - and -

2. The ownership allow input of the CSEQ function block is 1.0 or 2.0.
   
   - and -

3. The CSEQ function block is inactive, OPTIONS = NORMAL.
   
   - or -

   The CSEQ function block is in any state, OPTIONS = ALLOWED.
An acquire request is qualified if:

1. The CSEQ function block is not reserved.
   - or -
2. The CSEQ function block is reserved.
   - and -

The production ID specified in the ACQUIRE command by the requestor matches the reservation.

**NOTE:** When a CSEQ function block is acquired, it receives production ID information (BATCH, CAMPAIGN, and LOT identifiers) from the owner. The production ID identifiers do not become active until the CSEQ function block performs an inactive to run transition. For example, the owner starts the CSEQ function block from the batch complete state.

Example:
```
ACQUIRE FEED_TANK CAMPAIGN = MINE, \n  BATCH = YOURS, LOT = 1, PRIORITY = 1 
  WAIT UNTIL (FEED_TANK.OSTS = OWNED)
```

### Unacquire a CSEQ

**UNACQUIRE** *cseqname*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>cseqname</em></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ or THIS function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:** The purpose of this command is to counteract an earlier acquire command.

If the acquire command was queued, the unacquire command cancels it. In addition to the unacquire command, a queued acquire command is canceled if the requesting program terminates or stops communicating.

If the acquire command was granted, the unacquire command (issued by the owner) terminates ownership. The CSEQ function block becomes unowned and eligible for acquire in the following ways:

**NOTES:** Unacquire of a CSEQ function block can also happen in the following ways:
1. The ownership-allow input of the CSEQ function block changes to 0.0 or -1.0.
2. The owner program terminates or stops communicating.
Reserve a CSEQ

`RESERVE cseqname [CAMPAIGN = exp1,] [BATCH = exp2], [LOT = exp3,] [MAINTAIN = exp4]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cseqname</code></td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ or THIS function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp1</code> through <code>exp3</code></td>
<td>Campaign, batch and lot identifiers to be passed through to the CSEQ function block. By use of the reserved words MINE and YOURS, the client program may specify the CSEQ function block to be reserved use values associated with the client program (MINE) or the CSEQ function block (YOURS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp4</code></td>
<td>Reservation status: 0 = reservation is cancelled when ownership is granted. 1 = reservation is maintained when ownership is granted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

The purpose of this command is to restrict future ownership of the CSEQ function block. The requesting program specifies which parameters (BATCH, CAMPAIGN, and LOT) are to be included in the reservation. If campaign, batch or lot is not specified in the reserve command then the omitted parameter is considered as a don’t care.

When a CSEQ function block receives a reserve request and conditions permit, it will grant the request. Otherwise, it will discard the request. The following conditions must be true for a reserve request to be granted:

- CSEQ function block is not reserved.
- CSEQ function block reserve allow input is 1.0.

The data type for the BATCH, CAMPAIGN, and LOT identifiers depends on the identifier mode. Default mode is numeric. Using the #ALPHA directive changes the numeric identifiers to 16 character alphanumeric character strings.

**Examples:**

- `RESERVE REACTOR CAMPAIGN = MINE, BATCH = MINE, \ LOT = YOURS`
- `RESERVE FEEDTANK BATCH = 456`
FUNCTION LIBRARY

COMMON SEQUENCE (continued)

data structure

Unreserve a CSEQ

UNRESERVE  cseqname

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ or THIS function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARKS:
The purpose of this command is to unreserve a CSEQ function block. The command is operative only if issued by the CSEQ function block or its owner.

In addition to this command, a CSEQ function block can become unreserved in the following ways:

1. The reserve allow input of the CSEQ function block becomes 0.0.

2. The CSEQ program becomes owned by a qualified program and the reservation was not specified as MAINTAIN.

Example

UNRESERVE REACTOR

Start/restart a CSEQ

START  cseqname  [RECIPE = exp1]  [OPERATION = exp2]  
[PROGRAM = exp3]  [ISA-S88.01-1995 compliant terminology]

- or -

START  cseqname  [RECIPE = exp1]  [PHASE = exp2]  
[PROGRAM = exp3]  [Elsag Bailey traditional terminology]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>Unit recipe identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp2</td>
<td>Operation number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp3</td>
<td>Program ID number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARKS:
This command starts or restarts a CSEQ function block. The CSEQ function block starts if the current status is complete and restarts if the current status is holding. The command is ignored if the CSEQ function block is already running.

The unit procedure, operation, and program ID specifications in this command are optional. If not specified, the CSEQ function block will use its current value for the unspecified item.

This command is operative only if issued by the owner of the CSEQ function block. This command is disabled while the CSEQ function block is in the operator mode.
The data type for the RECIPE identifier depends on the identifier mode. Default mode is numeric. Using the #ALPHA directive changes the numeric identifiers to 16 character alphanumeric character strings.

Example: START REACTOR RECIPE = “PROD_123”, OPERATION = 1
START FEEDTNK RECIPE = 123

Hold a CSEQ

**HOLD  cseqname**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cseqname</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

This command requests a CSEQ function block to switch into HOLD LOGIC.

The command is ignored if:

1. The CSEQ function block is in operator mode.
   - or -

2. The CSEQ function block is holding or complete.
   - or -

3. The CSEQ function block is in hold or fault logic.
   - or -

4. External hold is disabled.

This command is operative only if issued by the owner of a CSEQ function block.

Example: HOLD REACTOR
HOLD FEEDTNK
**COMMON SEQUENCE (continued)**

**data structure**

**COMMANDS:**

Set a command variable

**SET** \`cseqname.CVn = exp\`

- or -

**SET** \`THIS.CVn = exp\`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`cseqname`</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`n`</td>
<td>Number of command variable (1 through 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`exp`</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

The command variable provides a convenient way for an owner of a CSEQ function block to send numeric data to the server. The owner program writes to the command variables using the name of the CSEQ function block. The server program writes to the command variables using the name \`THIS\` only when the server is not owned.

This command is operative from the client program only if it is the owner.

This command is operative from the server program only when the server is not owned.

Examples:

\`SET FILLTANK.CV2 = 3\`
\`SET THIS.CV2 = X\`

Set a command string variable

**SET** \`cseqname.CMDSTRG = exp\`

- or -

**SET** \`THIS.CMDSTRG = exp\`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`cseqname`</td>
<td>Name of the CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`exp`</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**

The command string variable provides a convenient way for an owner of a CSEQ function block to send alphanumeric data to the server. The owner program writes to the command string variables using the name of the CSEQ function block. The server program writes to the command string variables using the name \`THIS\` only when the server is not owned.
This command is operative from the client program only if it is the owner.

This command is operative from the server program only when the server is not owned.

Examples:
- SET REACTOR_EXEC.CMDSTRG = "REACTOR READY"
- SET THIS.CMDSTRG = STRING_VAR

Set a status variable  
\[ \text{SET } \text{THIS.SV}_n = \text{exp} \]

### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>Number of status variable (1 through 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{exp} )</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Remarks:
The status variables provide a convenient way for a CSEQ function block to send numeric data to its owner and other connected programs. The server program writes to a status variable using the name THIS. The owner or other connected program reads a status variable using the name of the CSEQ function block. This command is operative only if issued by the server.

Example:
- SET THIS.SV2 = 3
- SET THIS.SV7 = THIS.BATCH

Set a CSEQ status string variable  
\[ \text{SET } \text{THIS.STATSTRG} = \text{exp} \]

### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{exp} )</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Remarks:
The status string variables provide a convenient way for a CSEQ function block to send alphanumeric data to its owner and other connected programs. The CSEQ function block writes to a status string variable using the name THIS. The owner or other connected program reads a status string variable using the name of the CSEQ function block. This command is operative only if issued by the server.

Example:
- SET THIS.STATSTRG = "CHARGE ABORTED"
- SET THIS.STATSTRG = STRING_VAR
CONNECT

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
**CONST**

**PURPOSE:** To define a constant.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** The following declaration is used to define a constant.

```
CONST name = const
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the constant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Value of the constant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: `CONST MAX_LNT = 10.0`

**REMARKS:** Refer to **BATCH DATA** and **DECLARATIONS**.

**REFERENCES:** The value of a constant is read by using its name in an expression or a definition.

Example: `IF (X > MAX_LNT) THEN`
**CONST ARRAY**

**data structure**

**PURPOSE:**
A CONST ARRAY is a group of constants organized in a table. An array may have 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole will have a name. An individual constant (element) of an array is identified by an array index which specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension.

**LANGUAGE:**
BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATION:**
The following statements are used to declare CONST ARRAYS.

{for one dimensional array}

```
CONST ARRAY name (low:high1) (list)
```

- or -

```
CONST ARRAY name (low:* ) (list)
```

{for two dimensional array}

```
CONST ARRAY name (low:high1, low:high2) (list)
```

{for three dimensional array}

```
CONST ARRAY name (low:high1, low:high2, low:high3) (list)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>Lowest subscript value (must be 0 or 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highN</td>
<td>Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. Must be a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>List of array element names. This one-dimensional list has one entry for each element of the array. The order of the entries is determined by varying the first (leftmost) subscript the fastest, then the second and third.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** For two and three dimensional arrays the lowest subscript value for the second and third dimension must match the value that was specified by the first dimension.

**Examples:**
In the following examples, the values in the constant list correspond to the respective subscript values.

```
CONST ARRAY C (1:5) (1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
CONST ARRAY CZ (0:5) (0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
CONST ARRAY CC (1:3, 1:2) (11, 21, 31, 12, 22, 32)
```
CONST ARRAY CCC (1:2, 1:2, 1:2) (111, 211, 121, 221, \n112, 212, 122, 222)

**REFERENCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Array element</th>
<th>[for one dimensional array]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name (exp1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for two dimensional array</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name (exp1, exp2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three dimensional array</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name (exp1, exp2, exp3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- A = C (5)
- A = CC (i, j)
- A = CCC (1, 2, i)
- CALL MAX (CC (i, j), X)

**Entire array**

In some operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array is referenced as follows:

name

- or -

name (*...)

**Examples:**

- CALL MAX_ELEMENT (C)
- XB (*) = C (*)

**Parameter** | **Description**
---|---
name | Name of the array.
expn | Value of the nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an error.

**Parameter** | **Description**
---|---
name | Name of the array.
(*...) | Indicates the number of dimensions, (that is (*),(*, *) or (*, *, *)).
Since constant arrays are **read only**, there are no commands to write to them.

**NOTE:** Subscript range checking is done by the compiler if all of the subscripts of an array are constant. Range checking is always performed during program execution. Each time an array element is read, the subscript values are checked. If a subscript value is out of bounds, some error action is taken. If the error occurs during any mode other than FAULT mode (for example, NORMAL mode), the normal flow of control is aborted. The mode is changed to fault and control is transferred to fault logic with the system generated fault code of -17. If the error occurs during FAULT mode, flow of control is not aborted. A value of zero is returned for the incorrectly subscribed array element.
**CONST STRING**

**PURPOSE:**
Constant strings can be declared in the BATCH DATA section, UNIT PARAMETERS section, or any place in the phase, function, or monitor subroutines. Constant strings can also be declared in the UNIT DATA section of a program and then declared again (given a value) in the unit definition file.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch 90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DECLARATION:**

- [from the BATCH DATA section of a Batch 90 program]
  ```
  CONST STRING cstrname = "string value"
  ```

- [from the UNIT DATA section of a Batch 90 program]
  ```
  CONST STRING cstrname [(cons)]
  ```

- [from the UNIT DATA section of a unit definition file]
  ```
  CONST STRING name = "value"
  ```

- [explicit constant string]
  ```
  CONST STRING name = "string_exp"
  ```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cstrname</td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string value</td>
<td>Value of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons</td>
<td>Maximum number of characters that may be included in the string value specification in the unit definition file. The default value is 80 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The same name used in the UNIT DATA section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>Value of the constant string. This value can not contain more characters than were specified in the UNIT DATA section of the batch program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string_exp</td>
<td>Explicit constant string used within a string command or reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- CONST STRING CLASS_NAME = “GLASS_LINED_REACTORS”
- CONST STRING UNIT_NAME = “REACTOR - R552”
- IF (VAR_STR = “SKIP”) THEN...
**REFERENCES:**

Get current string length  

cstrname.CLEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cstrname</td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cstrname.CLEN</td>
<td>The number of characters included in the string value parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SOME_VAR = CLASS_NAME.CLEN  
OTHER_VAR = UNIT_NAME.CLEN

**REMARKS:**

The .CLEN reference returns numerically the maximum and current number of characters contained within the referenced constant string. For constant strings, these numbers will be identical with the possible exception of constant strings declared within UNIT DATA sections. For constant strings declared within UNIT DATA sections, this reference will return the number of characters that were included in the specified string value from the unit definition file. In the event the specified string value is shorter than the maximum specified in the batch program, the constant string will not be back filled with spaces.

Get maximum string length  

cstrname.MLEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cstrname</td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cstrname.MLEN</td>
<td>The number of characters included in the string value parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SOME_VAR = CLASS_NAME.MLEN  
OTHER_VAR = UNIT_NAME.MLEN

**REMARKS:**

The .MLEN reference returns numerically the maximum and current number of characters contained within the referenced constant string. For constant strings, these numbers will be identical with the possible exception of constant strings declared within UNIT DATA sections. For constant strings declared in UNIT DATA sections, this reference will return the maximum number of characters that were specified by the declaration in the batch program.
Get entire string value  \( cstrname \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( cstrname )</td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SOME_VAR_STRING = CLASS_NAME  
OTHER_VAR_STRING = UNIT_NAME

**REMARKS:**  
If the referenced constant string is longer than the variable string, the first \( x \) (maximum number of characters for string variable) characters of the constant string shall be stored in the variable string.

Get value of a substring  \( cstrname \) (FROM \( exp1 \) FOR \( exp2 \))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( cstrname )</td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp1 )</td>
<td>First character or starting point of the substring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp2 )</td>
<td>Number of characters to be included in the substring. If not specified, the substring is terminated at the end of ( cstrname ).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SOME_VSTRING = CLASS_NAME (FROM 1 FOR 11)  
OTHER_VSTRING = UNIT_NAME (FROM 11 FOR 14)

**REMARKS:**  
Character positions begin with the leftmost character as character number one. Subsequent characters are numbered according to their position relative to character number one. References that extend beyond the end of the constant string shall be terminated at the end of the constant string.
CONST STRING ARRAY

data structure

PURPOSE: A CONST STRING ARRAY is a group of constants organized into an array. An array may have 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole has a name. An individual constant string (element) of an array is identified by an array index that specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension.

LANGUAGE: The following statements are used to declare constant string arrays.

|for one dimensional array|
|CONST STRING ARRAY name (low:high1) [=] (list)

|for two dimensional array|
|CONST STRING ARRAY name (low:high1, [low:]high2) [=] \ (list)

|for three dimensional array|
|CONST STRING ARRAY name (low:high1, [low:]high2, \ [low:] high3) [=] (list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>Lowest subscript value (must be 0 or 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highN</td>
<td>Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. Must be a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>List of array element names. This one-dimensional list has one entry for each element of the array. Elements can be either explicit strings enclosed by quotation marks or names of previously defined constant strings. The order of the entries is determined by varying the first (leftmost) subscript the fastest, then the second and third.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: For two and three dimensional arrays the lowest subscript value for the second and third dimension must match the value that was specified by the first dimension.

Examples:

CONST STRING ARRAY C (1:3) (STRING1, STRING2, STRING3)
CONST STRING ARRAY CZ (0:4) (STRING0, STRING1, STRING2, \ STRING3)
CONST STRING ARRAY RESPONSES (1:3) (OPERATOR \
FUNCTION LIBRARY

CONST STRING ARRAY (continued)

RESPONSE MESSAGE #1", "OPERATOR RESPONSE MESSAGE #2", "OPERATOR RESPONSE MESSAGE #3"

REFERENCE:

Array element

{for one dimensional array}

\[ \text{name (exp1)} \]

{for two dimensional array}

\[ \text{name (exp1, exp2)} \]

{for three dimensional array}

\[ \text{name (exp1, exp2, exp3)} \]

Examples:

ASTRING = C (3)
ASTRING = CC (i, j)
ASTRING = CCC (1, 2, k)
SUBSTRING = CC (i, j) (FROM 6 FOR 15)

Entire array

In some operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array is referenced as follows:

\[ \text{name} \]

- or -

\[ \text{name (*...)} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expn</td>
<td>Value of the nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

NEW_ARRAY (*) = OLD_ARRAY (*)

The first form (just the name) is used when an array is passed as an argument to a function or monitor subroutine. The second form is used in other whole array operations (that is, array copy).

Example:

NEW_ARRAY (*) = OLD_ARRAY (*)
CONST STRING ARRAY (continued)

data structure

COMMANMDS: Since constant string arrays are read only, there are no commands to write to them.

NOTE: Subscript range checking is done by the compiler if all of the subscripts of an array are constant. Range checking is always performed during program execution. Each time an array element is read, the subscript values are checked. If a subscript value is out of bounds, some error action is taken. If the error occurs during any mode other than FAULT mode (for example, NORMAL mode), the normal flow of control is aborted. The mode is changed to fault and control is transferred to fault logic. If the error occurs during FAULT mode, flow of control is not aborted.
CONTINUOUS

statement of a phase, state, or monitor subroutine

**PURPOSE:**
This statement marks the beginning of the CONTINUOUS section of a phase, state, or monitor subroutine. This section provides continuous operations specific to the subroutine. This is the only executable section of a monitor subroutine.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90       UDF
```

**FORMAT:**

```
CONTINUOUS [LOGIC]
statement
  
  
  
  statement
```

Example:

```
CONTINUOUS
  IF (FIC501.STS = BAD) FAULT 4
  IF (FIC502.STS = BAD) FAULT 5
```

**REMARKS:**
When the phase or state subroutine is active, this section executes continuously (the entire section is executed once every function block cycle). It executes in all modes (that is, normal, fault, etc.). No **loops** (except FOR LOOP) or **waits** are allowed in this section.
CONTROL STATION

function block

**PURPOSE:** Control station function blocks (function code 80) provide an interface between the MFP module and operator interface devices (for example, OIS, DCS). A control station provides several modes for managing its set point and control output.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90  UDF
```

**DECLARATION:** Before a control station can be accessed from a subroutine, it must be declared. The declaration can appear only in a data section.

```
BLOCK csname, BLK = const, FC = CS [, WATCH]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATCH (Batch 90 only)</td>
<td>Control station to be placed on watch by the Batch Historian upon program start-up. If not specified, the control station will be off watch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: `BLOCK FC501, BLK = 100, FC = CS`

**REFERENCES:** Control station data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get control output `csname.CO`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csname.CO</td>
<td>Control output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: `X = FC501.CO`

Get set point `csname.SP`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csname.SP</td>
<td>Set point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: `X = FC501.SP`
CONTROL STATION (continued)

Get ratio index  `csname.RX`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>csname</code></td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>csname.RX</code></td>
<td>Ratio index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  `X = FC501.RX`

Get manual/auto status  `csname.MODE`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>csname</code></td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `csname.MODE` | Mode:  
0 = manual.  
1 = auto.  
2 = cascade/ratio. |

Example:  `X = FC501.MODE`

Get process variable  `csname.PV`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>csname</code></td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>csname.PV</code></td>
<td>Process variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  `X = FC501.PV`

Get high alarm status  `csname.HAL`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>csname</code></td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `csname.HAL` | High alarm status:  
1 (true) = high alarm.  
0 (false) = not high alarm. |

Example:  `X = FC501.HAL`

Get low alarm status  `csname.LAL`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>csname</code></td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `csname.LAL` | Low alarm status:  
1 (true) = low alarm.  
0 (false) = not low alarm. |

Example:  `X = FC501.LAL`
CONTROL STATION (continued)

function block

Get deviation alarm status  

csname.DAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| csname.DAL| Deviation alarm status:  
1 (true) = deviation alarm.  
0 (false) = not deviation alarm. |

Example:  
\[ X = \text{FC501.DAL} \]

COMMANDS:

Set mode  

**SET**  

csname.MODE = exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Mode:  
0 = manual.  
1 = auto.  
2 = cascade/ratio. |

Example:  
\[ \text{SET FC501.MODE} = \text{AUTO} \]

Set set point  

**SET**  

csname.SP = exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Set point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
\[ \text{SET FC501.SP} = 53.2 \]

Set ratio index  

**SET**  

csname.RX = exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Ratio index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
\[ \text{SET FC501.RX} = 0.50 \]

Set control output  

**SET**  

csname.CO = exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Control output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
\[ \text{SET FC501.CO} = 53.2 \]
Set watch status
(Batch 90 only)

**SET** \( \text{csname.WATCH} = \text{exp} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csname</td>
<td>Name of the control station function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Batch Historian watch status: 0 = off, 1 = on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET CS501.WATCH = ON

**REMARKS:**

These commands act like OIS commands. Specifically, the control station may refuse a command depending on the mode and auxiliary logic affecting the station. For example, if the output of a station is in CO track or the station is in automatic, the SET.CO statement is ignored. These commands are buffered within the function block and do not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
CYCLE TIME

variable

**PURPOSE:** CYCLE TIME is a built in, read only variable. Value of the CYCLE TIME variable is the elapsed time (in seconds) from the start of the previous function block cycle to the start of the current cycle.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** Not required.

**REFERENCES:** CYCLE TIME is read by using it in an expression.

*Example:* TOTAL = TOTAL + CYCLE TIME
PURPOSE: This is the first statement of the data section of a UDF program. This section defines global data, function codes, and symbols. All declarations in the data section are global since they can be referenced by all function and monitor subroutines in the UDF program.

There may be more than one data section in a program. The second data section is often used to declare global monitor subroutines. Since global monitor subroutines must be defined in the program before they are declared, the second data section should appear after the monitor subroutine definitions.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

FORMAT: DATA
type1 name1
type2 name2

END DATA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Any one of the following: AUX Auxiliary UDF function block. BLOCK Function block. CONST Constant. CONST ARRAY Constant array. FGEN Function generator. VAR ARRAY Variable array. INPUT UDF block input. INTEGRATOR Global integrator. MONITOR Monitor call. OUTPUT UDF block output. RAMP Ramp. SPEC UDF block specification. TIMER Timer. UDF1 UDF type one. UDF2 UDF type two. VAR Variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: DATA
INPUT 1 P105, FC = MSDD
INPUT 2 FIC105, FC = CS
OUTPUT 0 FE105_DT
DATA (continued)

statement

OUTPUT 1 FQ105
SPEC 9 DELTA_T
SPEC 10 MAX_CHARGE
CONST NOT_OPEN = 0
VAR SUM
BLOCK START_PB, BLK = 125, FC = RCM
END DATA

REMARKS:

For function block declaration details, refer to:

- AOL: Analog exception report
- APID: Advanced PID
- BBUF: Boolean data buffer
- CS: Control station
- CSEQ: Common sequence
- DATAEXPT: User defined data export
- DOL: Digital exception report
- DD: Device driver
- MSDD: Multi-state device driver
- RBUF: Real data buffer
- RCM: Remote control memory
- REMSET: Remote manual set constant
- RMC: Remote motor control
- SMITH: Smith block
- TEXT: Text

Other function codes may be referenced by their function code number.

Data is initialized when a UDF program is run for the first time (that is, on the multi-function processor transition to execute).

The active data structures (for example, timers and monitor calls) execute independently of the active state subroutine. Active data structures declared in a data section are sometimes referred to as being global. Their values are initialized to zero at the start of the UDF sequence. They are never initialized again unless explicitly done so through a statement such as RESET.
**PURPOSE:** The data buffer function blocks (function codes 137, 138) provide the general mechanism for getting data from a batch or UDF program to the function blocks. Function code 137 is the real buffer, and function code 138 is the boolean buffer. A batch or UDF subroutine writes to the buffer function blocks using the statements described below. The data is then available (in the form of function block outputs) to the other function blocks.

**LANGUAGE:**

**DECLARATION:** Before a data buffer can be accessed from a subroutine, it must be declared. The declaration can appear only in the batch data section of a batch program.

```plaintext
BLOCK fbname, BLK = const, FC = fc, OUT (0) = \ oname0 |, OUT (1) = oname1 |, OUT (2) = oname2 | \\, OUT (3) = oname3
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fbname</td>
<td>Name of the data buffer function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fc</td>
<td>Function code name: RBUF (function code 137), BBUF (function code 138).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname0</td>
<td>Name of output 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname1</td>
<td>Name of output 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname2</td>
<td>Name of output 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname3</td>
<td>Name of output 3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: BLOCK BUF01, BLK = 100, FC = RBUF, OUT (0) = FT501, \ OUT (1) = FT502, OUT (3) = FT504

**REFERENCE:**

**Get output value**

```plaintext
oname.VAL
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the data buffer function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.VAL</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = FT501.VAL
DATA BUFFER (continued)

function block

COMMANDS:

Set output value  \[ \text{SET } oname\text{.VAL} = exp \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the data buffer function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET FT501.VAL = 100.0

**NOTE:** If oname is an BBUF (function code 138), a value \( \geq -0.5 \) and \( < 0.5 \) is considered false (0), otherwise it is true (1).

Set output quality  \[ \text{SET } oname\text{.Q} = exp \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the data buffer function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Quality:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = bad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET FV501.Q = BAD
DATA EXPORT

function block

PURPOSE: Data Export function codes (DATAEXPT, function code 194) enable the batch program to display operator messages at the OIS console as well as receive text string inputs from the console. The DATAEXPT function block can be declared in the BATCH DATA or UNIT DATA sections of a batch program or in the DATA section of a UDF program.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

DECLARATION: BLOCK strblk, BLK = cons1, FC = DATAEXPT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons1</td>
<td>Block address of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: BLOCK DIALOGUE, BLK = 1024, FC = DATAEXPT
BLOCK STATUS_IND, BLK = 9021, FC = DATAEXPT

REMARKS: Batch programs are able to write strings to the DATAEXPT function block only if specifications S1, S2, and S3 are set to a value of two (default value). The data export function block actually contains two separate strings. The input string corresponds to the operator entered response strings received from the OIS console. The output string corresponds to the output of the function block. The relationship between the input and output strings is determined by the mode and data interlock status of the DATAEXPT function block. Both mode and data interlock attributes may be read or written by the batch program when specifications S1, S2, and S3 are set to a value of two.

REFERENCES:

Get current input string length strblk.CLEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk.CLEN</td>
<td>The current number of characters included in the current input string value of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.CLEN
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.CLEN
function block

Get maximum output string length  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk.MLEN</td>
<td>The maximum number of characters in either string value of the DATAEXPT function block (specification S4).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: 
SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.MLEN  
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.MLEN

Get output string value  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk.OSTR</td>
<td>Output string value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: 
PROMPT_MSG = DIALOGUE.OSTR  
REQUIRED_ACTION = STATUS_IND.OSTR

REMARKS: 
Only the entire output string will be retrieved.

Get input string value  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk.ISTR</td>
<td>Value of the last operator entered input string response.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: 
PROMPT_MSG = DIALOGUE.ISTR  
REQUIRED_ACTION = STATUS_IND.ISTR

REMARKS: 
Only the entire input string will be retrieved.

Get alarm status  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| strblk.ALM | Alarm status:  
0 = no alarm.  
1 = level one alarm.  
2 = level two alarm.  
3 = level three alarm. |

Examples: 
SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.ALM  
IF (STATUS_IND.ALM > 0) OTHER_VAR = TRUE
**Get mode** \( strblk\).MODE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( strblk )</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( strblk\).MODE | Control mode:  
0 = manual.  
1 = auto.          |

**Examples:**

SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.MODE  
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.MODE

**REMARKS:**

In auto mode, only the batch program can write new output string values. In manual mode, the output string may be written by the batch program as well as echo the input string received from the console. The initial mode of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is manual.

**Get data interlock status** \( strblk\).DILK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( strblk )</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( strblk\).DILK | Interlock status:  
0 = unlocked.  
1 = locked.          |

**Examples:**

SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.DILK  
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.DILK

**REMARKS:**

The data interlock status of the DATAEXPT function block determines what the function block does with input string from the OIS console. When the interlock status is locked (1), messages received from the console are ignored. When the interlock status is unlocked (0), messages from the console are read into the input string of the function block. The control mode determines whether or not the message is echoed by the output string. The initial interlock status of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is locked.
function block

**Get mode lock status**  
*strblk.MLOCK*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>strblk</em></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *strblk.MLOCK* | Control mode change status:  
0 = mode change unlocked (enabled).  
1 = mode change locked (disabled). |

Examples:  
SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.MLOCK  
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.MLOCK

**REMARKS:**  
If the mode lock status is unlocked, the mode of the function block can be changed by the operator of an OIS console or by the batch program. If the mode lock status is locked, the mode of the function block can not be changed. The initial mode lock status of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is unlocked.

**Get new value status**  
*strblk.NEW*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>strblk</em></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *strblk.NEW* | New value status:  
0 = new value has not changed (false).  
1 = new input string value exists (true). |

Examples:  
WAIT UNTIL (DIALOGUE.NEW = TRUE)  
WAIT UNTIL (STATUS_IND.NEW)

**REMARKS:**  
This reference may be used by a batch program to determine when a new message has been received from the OIS console. The status is latched in the true state when a new input string is received. It remains latched until reset by a read operation from the batch program.

**Get truncation status**  
*strblk.TRUNC*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>strblk</em></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *strblk.TRUNC* | Truncation status:  
0 = string value not truncated (false).  
1 = string value truncated (true). |

Examples:  
IF (DIALOGUE.TRUNC = TRUE)...  
IF (STATUS_IND.TRUNC)...
**REMARKS:** When a string value exceeding the maximum string length specification of the function block is being written, the function block truncates the string, writes the value, and sets a flag.

**Get quality status** `strblk.Q`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>strblk</code></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `strblk.Q` | Current quality status:  
0 = good.  
1 = bad. |

Examples:  
SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.Q  
OTHER_VAR = STATUS_IND.Q

**REMARKS:** The quality status of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is determined by the start-up control specification S6. If the specification is set to a value of zero, the quality on start-up is bad. If the specification is set to one, the quality on start-up is forced to good.

**Get re-alarm status** `strblk.REALM`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>strblk</code></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strblk.REALM</code></td>
<td>A 0 to 1 or 1 to 0 transition in value indicates the function block has gone into or out of re-alarm condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
SOME_VAR = DIALOGUE.REALM  
IF (STATUS_IND.REALM <> OLD_STATUS)...  

**REMARKS:** The re-alarm status may be read by batch programs. The re-alarm condition is indicated by a change in the .REALM value.
FUNCTION LIBRARY

DATA EXPORT (continued)

function block

COMMANDS:

Write to the output string

\[
\text{SET } \text{strblk}.\text{OSTR} = \text{strname} \begin{cases} \text{[FROM exp1 FOR exp2]} \end{cases}
\]

- or -

\[
\text{SET } \text{strblk}.\text{OSTR} = \text{“string_exp”}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ctrblk}</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{strname}</td>
<td>Name of the constant or variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{exp1}</td>
<td>Starting point within the string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{exp2}</td>
<td>Number of characters to be included in the substring. If not specified, the entire contents of \textit{strname} is written to the output string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{string_exp}</td>
<td>Explicit constant string to be written to the output string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\[
\text{SET DIALOGUE}.\text{OSTR} = \text{“PROCESS CRITICAL !”}
\]

\[
\text{SET STATUS_IND}.\text{OSTR} = \text{REQUIRED_ACTION (FROM 1 FOR 32)}
\]

REMARKS:

The entire output string will be written. The ability to write to substrings within the output string is not supported.

Set mode

\[
\text{SET } \text{strblk}.\text{MODE} = \text{exp}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{strblk}</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{exp}</td>
<td>Control mode: 0 = manual, 1 = auto.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\[
\text{SET DIALOGUE}.\text{MODE} = \text{AUTO}
\]

\[
\text{SET STATUS_IND}.\text{MODE} = \text{MANUAL}
\]

REMARKS:

In auto mode, only the batch program can write new output string values. In manual mode, the output string may be written by the batch program as well as echo the input string received from the console. The initial mode of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is manual.
Set data interlock status

**SET** `strblk.MLOCK = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>strblk</code></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp</code></td>
<td>Data interlock status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = unlocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = locked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- SET DIALOGUE.DILK = 0
- SET STATUS_IND.DILK = 1

**REMARKS:**

The data interlock status of the DATAEXPT function block determines what the function block does with input string from the OIS console. When the interlock status is locked (1), messages received from the console are ignored. When the interlock status is unlocked (0), messages from the console are read into the input string of the function block. The control mode determines whether or not the message is echoed by the output string. The initial interlock status of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is unlocked.

Set mode lock status

**SET** `strblk.MLOCK = exp`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>strblk</code></td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp</code></td>
<td>Control mode lock status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = unlocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = locked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- SET DIALOGUE.MLOCK = OFF
- SET STATUS_IND.MLOCK = ON

**REMARKS:**

If the mode lock status is unlocked, the mode of the function block can be changed by the operator of a OIS console or by the batch program. If the mode lock status is locked, the mode of the function block can not be changed. The initial mode lock status of the DATAEXPT function block upon start-up is unlocked.
**DATA EXPORT (continued)**

*function block*

**Set alarm status**  
**SET**  \( \text{strblk}.\text{ALM} = \exp \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{strblk} )</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( \exp \) | Alarm status:  
0 = no alarm.  
1 = level one alarm.  
2 = level two alarm.  
3 = level three alarm. |

Examples:  
SET DIALOGUE.ALM = 0  
SET STATUS_IND.ALM = 2

**Set quality**  
**SET**  \( \text{strblk}.\text{Q} = \exp \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{strblk} )</td>
<td>Name of the DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( \exp \) | Quality status:  
0 = good.  
1 = bad. |

Examples:  
SET DIALOGUE.Q = GOOD  
SET STATUS_IND.Q = 1

**REMARKS:**  
Character positions begin with the leftmost character as character number one. Subsequent characters are numbered according to their position relative to character number one. References that extend beyond the end of the constant string shall be terminated at the end of the constant string.
**#DEBUG LEVEL**

*directive*

**PURPOSE:** The #DEBUG LEVEL directive tells the compiler to set the debug level for the statements that follow the directive. A higher debug level causes more statements to be debugable but causes the programs object file to be larger. A lower debug level causes fewer statements to be debugable but causes the object file to be smaller.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>A number from 1 to 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:** 

```plaintext
#DEBUG LEVEL = const
```

Example: 

```plaintext
#DEBUG LEVEL = 4
```

**REMARKS:** Refer to the *Batch Data Manager (Release 4.0)* instruction for a description of the debug level function and how the debugger operates. Debug level determines which lines of the program may be stopped at and what the N+7 (line number of the program) output of the BSEQ function block is. The debug levels are:

- **Level 4** Can stop at all executable lines of code.
- **Level 3** Can stop at every occurrence of:
  - CALL
  - CASE
  - CONTINUOUS logic declaration
  - ENDSUBR for monitor and function subroutines
  - FAULT logic declaration
  - FOR...END FOR loop
  - FUNCTION subroutine declaration
  - HOLD logic declaration
  - IF
  - MONITOR subroutine declaration
  - NORMAL logic declaration
  - PHASE subroutine declaration
  - REPEAT...UNTIL
  - RESTART logic declaration
  - SET AND WAIT
  - WAIT FOR
  - WAIT UNTIL
  - WAIT WHILE
  - WHILE...ENDWHILE
#DEBUG LEVEL (continued)

directive

**Level 2** Can stop at every occurrence of:

- CALL
- ENDSUBR of monitor and function subroutines
- MONITOR subroutine declaration
- SET AND WAIT
- WAIT

**Level 1** Can stop at every occurrence of:

- SET AND WAIT
- WAIT

**Level 0** Will not stop at any line of code.

This directive can be used anywhere in a program and as many times as desired. Different parts of the program may be at different debug levels.
DECLARATIONS

statement

PURPOSE: This statement marks the beginning of a DECLARATIONS section. Refer to BATCH DATA, DATA, FUNCTION, MONITOR, PHASE SUBR, and STATE SUBR for details.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF
### #DESCRIPTOR

directive

**PURPOSE:** This directive assigns a 16 character descriptor to the program. This descriptor is displayed by the various utilities to make it very clear what each object file represents.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
| BATCH 90 | UDF |
```

**FORMAT:**

```
#DESCRIPTOR "string"
```

**Example:**

```
#DESCRIPTOR "K41 BATCH LOGIC"
```

**NOTE:** If the descriptor specified by "string" contains more than 16 characters, the compiler truncates the descriptor to the first 16 characters and generates a warning.
**DEVICE DRIVER**

*function block*

**PURPOSE:** Device driver function blocks (function code 123) are used to control two-state devices (for example, opened and closed).

**LANGUAGE:**

| Batch 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** A device driver must be declared before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The declaration must appear in a BATCH DATA (Batch 90), UNIT DATA (Batch 90), or DATA (UDF) sections. Batch 90 and UDF languages will only manipulate device driver function blocks in which specification S1 is set to two.

**BLOCK**

```plaintext
ddname, BLK = const, FC = DD [co_action] [, WATCH]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ddname</code></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>const</code></td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>co_action</code></td>
<td>Specifies whether the control output value is to be inverted as it passes to and from the function block domain (NORMAL-normal CO value, INVERT-inverted CO value). If no action is specified, NORMAL is assumed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>WATCH</code> (Batch 90 only)</td>
<td>Specifies device driver to be placed on watch by the Batch Historian upon program start-up. If not specified, the device drive will be off watch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- `BLOCK FV501, BLK = 100, FC = DD NORMAL`
- `BLOCK FV502, BLK = 150, FC = DD INVER`

**REFERENCES:** Device driver data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get control output**

```plaintext
ddname.CO
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ddname</code></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ddname.CO</code></td>
<td>Control output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: `X = FV501.CO`

**NOTE:** Refer to Co-Action in DECLARATIONS.
**DEVICE DRIVER** (continued)

function block

- **Get status** *ddname.STS*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname</em></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname.STS</em></td>
<td>Status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 = waiting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**
The time duration used by the device driver function block when waiting to verify its feedback inputs is determined by specification S9 of the function block.

**Example:** IF (FV501.STS = BAD) THEN

- **Get manual/auto mode** *ddname.MODE*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname</em></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname.MODE</em></td>
<td>Mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = auto.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** IF (FV501.MODE IS AUTO) THEN

- **Get tracking status** *ddname.TRK*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname</em></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname.TRK</em></td>
<td>Tracking status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = tracking off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = tracking on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** IF (FV501.TRK = 0) FAULT 15

**COMMANDS:**

- **Set mode** *SET ddname.MODE = exp*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ddname</em></td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>exp</em></td>
<td>Mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = auto.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** SET FV501.MODE = AUTO
SET FV501.MODE = 1
Set control output

**SET AND WAIT** \( ddname.CO = \text{exp} \)

- or -

**SET** \( ddname.CO = \text{exp} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( ddname )</td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{exp} )</td>
<td>Control output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** The operation of this command depends on the mode and tracking status of the function block.

1. If the mode is auto, the control output state is set to \( \text{exp} \).

2. If the mode is not auto and tracking is disabled, \( \text{exp} \) is recorded inside the function block, but the control output state is not updated. If the mode is later changed to auto, then the control output state is updated.

3. If the mode is not auto and tracking is enabled, the command has no effect.

The SET AND WAIT version of this command performs this operation and then waits for confirmation (that is, the control output state is equal to \( \text{exp} \) and the feedback status is good). The command retries the operation (once per cycle) while waiting.

Confirmation does not require that the mode is auto. It requires the feedback status is good and the control output is in the specified state.

The SET version performs the same operation but does not wait.

**Examples:**

- \( \text{SET FV501.CO} = \text{OPEN} \)
- \( \text{SET FV501.CO} = 1 \)
function block

**Set status override**  
**SET** \(ddname\).OVR = \(exp\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ddname)</td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(exp\) | Value:  
0 = override off.  
1 = override on. |

**Example:**  
SET FV501.OVR = ON  
SET FV501.OVR = 1

**Set tracking status**  
**SET** \(ddname\).TRK = \(exp\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ddname)</td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(exp\) | Device tracking:  
0 = off.  
1 = on. |

**Example:**  
SET FV505.TRK = ON

**REMARKS:**  
The purpose of control output tracking is to provide a bumpless transfer of the control output during a mode change from manual to auto. In manual mode, the operator controls the control output value. If tracking is disabled and the mode is changed from manual to auto, the control output will go to the last value that was written to the function block by the program (that is, the control output may bump). If tracking is enabled, the control output value will remain unchanged during the mode change. The initial value of tracking status (when the MFP module is placed into the execute mode) is off.

**Set watch status**  
**(Batch 90 only)**  
**SET** \(ddname\).WATCH = \(exp\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ddname)</td>
<td>Device driver function block name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(exp\) | Batch Historian watch status:  
0 = off.  
1 = on. |

**Example:**  
SET FV505.WATCH = ON

**REMARKS:**  
These commands are buffered within the function block and do not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
**PURPOSE:**
The digital exception report (DOL, function code 45) transmits a digital (boolean) value and its attributes (quality and alarm) via INFI-NET network to operator consoles and other nodes.

**LANGUAGE:**

```plaintext
BATCH 90  UDF
```

**DECLARATION:**
Each DOL function block to be used by a batch program must be declared as follows:

**NOTE:** Input S1 of the DOL function block must be set to 2. Otherwise, batch program commands will be ignored.

```plaintext
BLOCK name, BLK = const, FC = DOL [, WATCH]
```

**REFERENCES:**
DOL data may be read by using the appropriate name in expression.

**Get value** `name.VAL`

```plaintext
Parameter | Description
---|---
name | Name of the DOL function block.
name.VAL | Current value.
```

Example: `X = DOL501.VAL`

**Get quality** `name.Q`

```plaintext
Parameter | Description
---|---
name | Name of the DOL function block.
name.Q | Current quality:
0 = good.
1 = bad.
```

Example: `X = DOL501.Q`
**DIGITAL EXCEPTION REPORT** (continued)

**function block**

Get alarm status  \(name\).\text{ALM}  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(name\).\text{ALM} | Current alarm status: 
\(0 = \text{no alarm.}\) 
\(1 = \text{alarm.}\) |

Example:  \(X = \text{DOL501.ALM}\)

Get quality mask  \(name\).\text{QMSK}  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(name\).\text{QMSK} | Current quality mask: 
\(0 = \text{forced good.}\) 
\(1 = \text{forced bad.}\) 
\(2 = \text{not forced.}\) |

Example:  \(X = \text{DOL501.QMSK}\)

Get alarm mask  \(name\).\text{AMSK}  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \(name\).\text{AMSK} | Current alarm mask: 
\(0 = \text{forced no alarm.}\) 
\(1 = \text{forced alarm.}\) 
\(2 = \text{not forced.}\) |

Example:  \(X = \text{DOL501.AMSK}\)

**COMMANDS:**

The following statements are used to control DOL function blocks:

**Set value**  \(\text{SET} \ name\).\text{VAL} = exp  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(exp)</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \(\text{SET DOL501.VAL} = 0\)
**DIGITAL EXCEPTION REPORT**

**function block**

**Set quality mask**  
**SET**  
\[\text{name.QMSK} = \text{exp}\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Quality mask:  
3. 0 = forced 0 (good).  
1 = forced 1 (bad).  
2 = not forced. |

Examples:  
- SET DOL501.QMSK = 0  
- SET DOL501.QMSK = FORCED_OFF

**Set alarm mask**  
**SET**  
\[\text{name.AMSK} = \text{exp}\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Alarm mask:  
3. 0 = forced 0 (good).  
1 = forced 1 (bad).  
2 = not forced. |

Examples:  
- SET DOL501.AMSK = 0  
- SET DOL501.AMSK = FORCED_OFF

**Set watch status**  
(Batch 90 only)  
**SET**  
\[\text{name.WATCH} = \text{exp}\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the DOL function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Batch historian watch status:  
3. 0 = off.  
1 = on. |

Example:  
- SET DOL501.WATCH = ON
DIGIT

function

**PURPOSE:** The digit function extracts a single digit from a decimal number.

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90 | UDF

**FORMAT:** DIGIT (exp1, exp2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>Number from which digit is to be extracted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp2</td>
<td>Digit position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

IF (DIGIT (FV501.FBT, 2) = 1) THEN
IF (DIGIT (DE201, 1) = 5) THEN

**NOTE:** Digits are numbered from right to left, starting with 0 for the units digit. For example, the result of digit (678, 0) is 8. The result of digit (678, 1) is 7.

**REMARKS:** A common use for this operation is to examine feedback targets and values of a multi-state device driver function block. The .FBT reference extension returns a four digit value. Figure 4-2 shows the digit positions for the feedbacks on the multi-state device driver:

![Figure 4-2. Multi-State Device Driver Digit Positions](TP21436A)

**Examples:**

FEEDBACK 1 = DIGIT (MSDD_1.FBT, 3)
FEEDBACK 3 = DIGIT (MSDD_1.FBT, 1)
PURPOSE: This statement disables EXTERNAL HOLD; that is, it causes the batch sequence block to ignore the hold state of its run/hold input (specification S3). There is a complementary ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD statement. These two statements allow a batch program to have critical sections of code that cannot be interrupted by the operator.

LANGUAGE: 

FORMAT: DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD

Example: DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD

•

•

ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD

REMARKS: Once EXTERNAL HOLD is disabled, it remains disabled until explicitly enabled by the program.

EXTERNAL HOLD can also be disabled by the debugger utility.
DISABLE FAULT CODE

statement

**PURPOSE:** This statement disables fault code: that is, it causes subsequent FAULT statements to be ignored.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

DISABLE FAULT CODE

Example:

```
DISABLE FAULT CODE

- ...

ENABLE FAULT CODE
```

**REMARKS:** Refer to **ENABLE FAULT CODE** statement and **FAULT** statement.

**NOTE:** Run-time errors indicated by negative fault code numbers are not disabled by this statement.
**PURPOSE:** The DONE statement indicates that a batch program has finished.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:** DONE

Example: DONE

**REMARKS:** This statement terminates execution of the batch program and sets the program status to BATCH COMPLETE (inactive).
#EJECT

directive

**PURPOSE:** The #EJECT directive tells the compiler to insert a form feed in the listing file. This is used to separate pages in the printed listing.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90  UDF
```

**FORMAT:**

```
#EJECT
```

**Example:**

```
#EJECT
```
**ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD**

*statement*

**PURPOSE:**
This statement enables EXTERNAL HOLD; that is, it causes the batch sequence function block to recognize the hold state of its Run/Hold input (S3). There is a complementary DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD statement. These two statements allow a batch program to have critical sections of code which cannot be interrupted by the operator.

**LANGUAGE:**

**FORMAT:**

```
ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD
```

Example: DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD
```
.
.
.
ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD
```

**REMARKS:**
Once EXTERNAL HOLD is disabled, it remains disabled until explicitly enabled by the program.

EXTERNAL HOLD can also be disabled by the debugger utility. This statement does not affect the disable request of the debugger utility.
ENABLE FAULT CODE

statement

**PURPOSE:** This statement is the inverse of the DISABLE FAULT CODE statement (it clears the condition set by the DISABLE FAULT CODE statement).

**LANGUAGE:**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>UDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

ENABLE FAULT CODE

**Example:**

DISABLE FAULT CODE

ENABLE FAULT CODE

**REMARKS:** Refer to **FAULT** statement.
**PURPOSE:**

This statement marks the end of a subroutine (phase (Batch 90), state (UDF), function, or monitor).

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

```
ENDSUBR [name]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the subroutine (optional).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: ENDSUBR ADD_A

**NOTE:** A warning is generated if name does not match the subroutine name.
FAULT statement

PURPOSE: The FAULT statement changes the mode of a phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutine to FAULT; that is, it transfers control from the current logic section (NORMAL, HOLD or RESTART) to the FAULT LOGIC section.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90  UDF

FORMAT: FAULT exp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to the built-in status variable named fault code. This value must be positive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: CONTINUOUS

IF ( ...) FAULT 10

FAULT LOGIC

IF (FAULT CODE IS 10) THEN
  SET FV501.CO = OPEN
  SET AG1.CO = ON
ENDIF

REMARKS: FAULT CODE provides a convenient way to pass a small amount of information to the FAULT LOGIC. The value is read by using FAULT CODE in an expression.

The FAULT statement may not be used in the FAULT LOGIC section.

The FAULT statement has no effect if fault code is disabled. Any one of the following conditions disables the fault code.

1. Program disable - set by DISABLE FAULT CODE, cleared by ENABLE FAULT CODE.
2. Restart disable - set by transition to RESTART LOGIC, cleared by ENABLE FAULT CODE or transition to NORMAL LOGIC.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**FAULT LOGIC**

*section*

**PURPOSE:** This statement marks the beginning of a phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutines FAULT LOGIC section. It provides the sequential control of an operation in fault mode.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

FAULT LOGIC
statement
•
•
•
statement

Example:

FAULT LOGIC
SET FIC401.CO = OPEN
SET FIC402.CO = CLOSED

**REMARKS:**

The FAULT LOGIC section is activated when the program sequence mode is changed from HOLD, NORMAL or RESTART to FAULT.

When the last statement of this section is executed, the program sequence enters the holding state and all phase activity is suspended. Refer to Appendix A for more information about parallel phase execution.

When the program sequence state is changed to run, sequential control is transferred to the RESTART LOGIC of the current phase, or if a new phase has been selected, then control starts with the NORMAL LOGIC of the new phase.

If the FAULT LOGIC executes a RESTART statement, control is transferred directly to the RESTART LOGIC.
**FIRST CYCLE**

*variable*

**PURPOSE:** FIRST CYCLE is a built in status variable. It is true during the first cycle of any subroutine and false thereafter.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** Not required.

**REFERENCES:** FIRST CYCLE is read by using it in an expression.

**Example:**

```plaintext
IF (FIRST CYCLE) THEN
    X = 10
ENDIF
```
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**FOR...END FOR LOOP**

*control structure*

**PURPOSE:**
This looping structure repeatedly executes a block of statements while the specified loop test is true.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

\[
\text{FOR } \text{var} = \text{const1} [\text{STEP } \text{const1} ]\text{TO } \text{const2} \text{ DO}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{statement1} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{statementN}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{END FOR } [\text{var}]
\]

*or*

\[
\text{FOR } \text{var} = \text{const1} [\text{STEP } \text{const1} ]\text{WHILE } \text{exp3} \text{ DO}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{statement1} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{•} \\
\text{statementN}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{END FOR } [\text{var}]
\]

**Examples:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{FOR } \text{I} = 1 \text{ TO } 5 \text{ DO } \text{A(I)} = 1 & \quad \{\text{Executes 5 times}\} \\
\text{END FOR}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{FOR } \text{I} = 5 \text{ STEP } -1 \text{ TO } 2 \text{ DO } \text{A(I)} = 1 & \quad \{\text{Executes 4 times}\} \\
\text{END FOR}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{FOR } \text{I} = 1 \text{ WHILE } (\text{I} \leq \text{X}) \text{ DO } \text{A(I)} = 1 & \quad \{\text{Executes X times}\} \\
\text{END FOR}
\end{align*}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>var</td>
<td>Loop variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>Initial value of var.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const1</td>
<td>Step value. This value may be positive or negative. This term (STEP const1) is optional. If omitted value is taken as one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp2</td>
<td>Final value of loop variable. The loop test compares loop variable to final value. The sense of comparison depends on sign of step value. If step is positive, loop test is var &lt;= final value. If step is negative, loop test is var &gt;= final value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp3</td>
<td>Loop test expression.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parameter Description**

- var: Loop variable.
- exp1: Initial value of var.
- const1: Step value. This value may be positive or negative. This term (STEP const1) is optional. If omitted value is taken as one.
- exp2: Final value of loop variable. The loop test compares loop variable to final value. The sense of comparison depends on sign of step value. If step is positive, loop test is var <= final value. If step is negative, loop test is var >= final value.
- exp3: Loop test expression.
REMARKS: Following is a description of the FOR LOOP operation.

Initialize loop (var = exp). Perform loop test. If result is:

True Execute statements 1 through N. Add step value to loop variable (var = var + step). Repeat loop test.

False Exit loop (transfer control to statement following END FOR).

A FOR loop may be terminated by a BREAK statement (control transfers to the statement following END FOR).

Other looping structures (for example, REPEAT-UNTIL) suspend the program on each cycle of the loop. The FOR loop does not suspend the program. Therefore:

- The FOR loop may be used in continuous sections.

- The FOR loop should be used only for closed loops (where the number of iterations is predictable); for example, indexing through an array. The FOR loop should not be used for open-ended loops (for example, waiting for some function block event). Keep in mind that function blocks (in the same segment as the program) cannot execute while a FOR loop is executing.
A function subroutine is a unit of repetitive logic. The function subroutine may be called by a phase (Batch 90), state (UDF), monitor or another function subroutine. Information is passed to a function subroutine by means of parameters. A function subroutine can also return a value to the caller. This means that a function subroutine call can be used in an expression in the same way that a simple variable is used.

Figure 4-3 shows the basic function subroutine structure.

**FUNCTION**

**subroutine**

**PURPOSE:**

**LANGUAGE:**

**HEADING:**

A function subroutine heading defines the name of the subroutine and its formal parameters. The heading format is explained below:

```
FUNCTION name
   Parameter list
   DECLARATIONS
      Local data
   EXECUTABLE
      Executable statements
ENDSUBR [name]
```

NOTE: When passing a numeric recipe item to a function, it must be defined as type ANY.

When a formal parameter is type ARRAY, the parameter specification must indicate the number of dimensions as follows:

```
VAR ARRAY  fnameN (*...)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name assigned to this subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fname</td>
<td>Local name assigned to the nth formal parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There is no fixed limit on the number of parameters. However, only one parameter per line is permitted. The parameter list is terminated by the start of the next section.

Parameters whose data type is ANY are passed by value and cannot be modified by the subroutine. All other parameters are passed by reference and may be modified by the subroutine.

Example:

```plaintext
FUNCTION SET_DEVICE
  DD DEVICE
  ANY CMD_POSN
  VAR FAULT_ID
  DECLARATIONS
  VAR ORIGINAL_MODE
  EXECUTABLE
    ORIGINAL_MODE = DEVICE.MODE
    IF (DEVICE.MODE <> AUTO) SET DEVICE.MODE = AUTO
    SET DEVICE.CO = CMD_POSN
    WAIT WHILE (DEVICE.STS = WAITING)
```
FUNCTION LIBRARY

FUNCTION

The formal parameter list defines local names (those to be used inside the subroutine). Each formal parameter can be thought of as a place holder for an actual parameter. The actual parameters are specified by the caller when it calls the function subroutine. Each actual parameter in the call refers to a value (type ANY) or to some object of data (for example, timer, variable, function block). When the function subroutine is executed, each reference to a formal parameter becomes reference to the corresponding actual parameter.

DECLARATIONS:
The declarations statement marks the beginning of the declarations section. This section specifies data that is local to (owned by) the function. The following shows the format of the declarations section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of data object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Data type; must be one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
<td>Variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
<td>Variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>Variable string array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST</td>
<td>Constant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST ARRAY</td>
<td>Constant array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
<td>Constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>Constant string array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK ARRAY</td>
<td>Function block array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**FUNCTION (continued)**

**subroutine**

Example: DECLARATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>COUNTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST</td>
<td>TEN = 10.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** The local data of a function exists only while the function subroutine is executing. The data disappears when the function subroutine returns to the caller.

Local data of a function subroutine is not initialized to any particular value.

**FUNCTION CALL:**

There are two methods for calling function subroutines. The syntax used depends on whether or not the function subroutine has a return value.

**Function does not have a value**

The following syntax is used if the function subroutine does not have a value:

CALL name (param1, param2, ...)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function subroutine parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramN</td>
<td>Nth actual parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: CALL CHARGE (FV501, TOTAL_A, FIOA)

**Function does have a value**

If a function subroutine does have a return value, the call must be embedded as an operand of an expression. The following syntax is used:

name (param1, param2, ...)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramN</td>
<td>Nth actual parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Consider a function subroutine called MAX_VAL whose value is the larger of two parameters. Following is an example of a call to MAX_VAL:

FUNCTION MAX_VAL

| ANY VAL1 |
| ANY VAL2 |
| ANY VAL3 |

DECLARATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
<td>VALUES (1, 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXECUTABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VALUES</td>
<td>(1) = VAL1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FUNCTION (continued)

subroutine

VALUES (2) = VAL2
VALUES (3) = VAL3
RETURN (MAX VALUES (*))
ENDSUBR MAX_VAL

SOME_VAR = 1 + MAX_VAL (X, Y, Z)

NOTES:
1. The data type of each actual parameter must match the data type of the corresponding formal parameter. For example, if a formal parameter type is timer, then the corresponding actual parameter must be a timer. However, if the data type of a formal parameter is ANY, then the corresponding actual parameter may be a value, a constant, or an expression.

2. A function subroutine must be defined before it is called.

3. Function subroutine is an ordinary subroutine in that it takes control from the caller, executes to completion and returns control to the caller (as opposed to a monitor subroutine that executes in parallel with the caller).

4. RETURN statements may appear anywhere in the executable section. The ENDSUBR statement is equivalent to a RETURN.

5. If any RETURN statement in a function subroutine specifies a return value, all RETURNS must specify values.
FUNCTION BLOCK

function block

PURPOSE: Function blocks in an MFP batch system perform continuous functions including:

- Continuous control and computation.
- Process I/O (field and peer-to-peer).
- Operator I/O.

The function blocks are accessible from Batch 90 and UDF programs. General purpose access methods are described below. Function blocks are also accessible through special methods such as data buffer, device driver, control station resource manager, remote control memory, remote manual set constant.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

DECLARATION: Function blocks must be declared before they can be accessed from a Batch 90 or UDF program. The declaration can appear only in the data section.

```
BLOCK fbname, BLK = const1, [FC = const2, OUT (0) = \0name0, OUT (1) = oname1 ...]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fbname</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const1</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const2</td>
<td>Function code number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname0</td>
<td>Name of output 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname1</td>
<td>Name of output 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: BLOCK DI02A, BLK = 100, FC = 84, OUT (0) = FV501, OUT (1) \ = FV502

NOTE: Currently, the compiler does not use the function code database. Therefore, it is unable to tell if too many output names are assigned.

REFERENCE: Subroutines may read the value of any declared function block output by using the name in an expression. If alarm and quality are associated with a function block output, these attributes are readable. Alarm and quality are associated with exception report generating function blocks and I/O function blocks.
Get output value  \( oname.VAL \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.VAL</td>
<td>Output value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\[
X = \text{FT501.} \text{VAL} \\
X = \text{PB101.} \text{VAL}
\]

Get output quality  \( oname.Q \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.Q</td>
<td>Block output quality:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = bad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

\[
\text{IF} \ (\text{FT501.Q} = \text{BAD}) \ \text{SET} \ \text{FV500.CO} = \text{CLOSED}
\]

Get high alarm status  \( oname.HAL \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.HAL</td>
<td>High alarm status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = false (not high).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = true (high).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

\[
\text{IF} \ (\text{FT501.HAL}) \ \text{THEN}
\]

Get low alarm status  \( oname.LAL \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.LAL</td>
<td>Low alarm status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = false (not low).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = true (low).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

\[
\text{IF} \ \text{FT501.LAL} \ \text{THEN}
\]
FUNCTION BLOCK (continued)

data structure

Get alarm status  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oname</td>
<td>Name of the function block output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oname.ALM</td>
<td>Alarm status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = false (no alarm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = true (alarm).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  

IF (FT501.ALM) THEN
FUNCTION BLOCK ARRAY

data structure

PURPOSE:
A function block array is a group of previously defined function block outputs (from any function code type) organized in a table. An array may have 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole has a name. An individual function block output (element) of an array is identified by an array index that specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension. A function block array is a read only array that is used exclusively for referencing common reference extensions of function block outputs listed in the array.

LANGUAGE:

DECLARATION:
The following statements are used to declare function block arrays:

{for one dimensional array}

BLOCK ARRAY name (low:high1) (list)

{for two dimensional array}

BLOCK ARRAY name (low:high1, [low]:high2) (list)

{for three dimensional array}

BLOCK ARRAY name (low:high1, [low]:high2, [low]:high3) (list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>Lowest subscript value. Must be 0 or 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highN</td>
<td>Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. Must be a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16k.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>List of array element names. This one dimensional list has one entry for each element of the array. The order of the entries is determined by varying the first (leftmost) subscript the fastest, then the second and third.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: For two and three dimensional arrays the lowest subscript value for the second and third dimension must match the value that was specified by the first dimension.

Examples:

BLOCK ARRAY FLOW_SIGNALS (1:3) \ 
(FT201, FT202, FT203)
BLOCK ARRAY CONTROL_FEED (1:2, 1:2), \ 
(PY504, FY504, PU504, TV504)
BLOCK ARRAY LOGIC_VLV (1:3, 1:2, 1:3) \
FUNCTION BLOCK ARRAY (continued)

data structure

(\[LS111,LS211,LS311,LS121,LS221,LS321, \]
 PV112,PV212,PV312,PV122,PV222,PV322, \)
 FY113,FY213,FY313,FY123,FY223,FY323)

REFERENCE:

Element of an array

An individual element of an array is referenced as follows:

{for one dimensional array}

\textit{name} (exp1) .\textit{refext}

{for two dimensional array}

\textit{name} (exp1, exp2) .\textit{refext}

for three dimensional array}

\textit{name} (exp1, exp2, exp3) .\textit{refext}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expN</td>
<td>Value of the Nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.refext</td>
<td>Valid reference extension for a generic function block array. If the output does not contain the attribute referenced, the resulting value is meaningless. Valid references are .VAL, .ALM, .Q, .HAL, and .LAL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: NEXT\_TARGET = FEED\_VALUES (1,3) .VAL

PRO\_STAT = CELL\_STATUS (15) .VAL

Entire array

In some operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array is referenced as follows:

\textit{name} [.\textit{refext}]

- or -

\textit{name} (*...) [.\textit{refext}]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(*...)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions (that is, (<em>), (</em>,<em>), (</em>,<em>,</em>)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.refext</td>
<td>Valid reference extension for a generic function block array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first form (just the name) is used when an array is passed as an argument to a function or monitor subroutine. The
second form is used in other whole array operations (that is, array copy).

Examples:

- CALL GET_ALARM (VALUE_STAT)
- NEW_POSITION (\(\ast,\ast\)) = OLD_POSITION (\(\ast,\ast\)) \cdot VAL
**FUNCTION GENERATOR**

data structure

**PURPOSE:**
A function generator is an active data structure. It produces a value that varies in a piece-wise linear function of time.

**LANGUAGE:**
BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATION:**
The following is used to declare a function generator:

\[
\text{FGEN } \text{i\textunderscore\text{gname}} ((0, \text{value0}), (\text{time1}, \text{value1})..., \text{units})
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i\textunderscore\text{gname}</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>Time of Nth breakpoint (must be a constant).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valueN</td>
<td>Value of Nth breakpoint (must be a constant).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>units</td>
<td>Units of time (must be positive):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>Seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>Minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOUR</td>
<td>Hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: FGEN PROFILE1 ((0, 80.0), (30, 100.0), (60, 100.0), (90, 20.0), MIN)

Refer to Figure 4-4 for an example function generator.

![Example Function Generator](image)

**REFERENCE:**
Function generator data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.
FUNCTION GENERATOR (continued)

**data structure**

Get value  \( f\text{gname}.\text{VAL} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname} )</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname}.\text{VAL} )</td>
<td>Current value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( X = \text{FGEN1.VAL} \)

Get time value  \( f\text{gname}.\text{TIM} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname} )</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname}.\text{TIM} )</td>
<td>Current time value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( X = \text{FGEN1.TIM} \)

Get status  \( f\text{gname}.\text{STS} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname} )</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( f\text{gname}.\text{STS} \) | Current status:  
\( 0 \) = holding.  
\( 1 \) = running. |

Example:  \( X = \text{FGEN1.STS} \)

**COMMANDS:**

Start  \( \text{START} \ f\text{gname} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname} )</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( \text{START} \ \text{FGEN1} \)

Hold  \( \text{HOLD} \ f\text{gname} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( f\text{gname} )</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  \( \text{HOLD} \ \text{FGEN1} \)
Reset  \textbf{RESET \textit{fgname} (exp)}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{fgname}</td>
<td>Name of the function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{exp}</td>
<td>Initial time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This sets the time to \textit{exp}, the value (.VAL) to the appropriate value for the specified time and the status to holding.

Example:  \textbf{RESET FGEN1 (0)}
GLOBAL DATA STRUCTURES (INTEGRATORS, TIMERS, ETC)

Refer to BATCH DATA and DATA statements.
#HIHI

directive

**PURPOSE:**
The #HIHI compiler directive forces the numeric recipe parameters to include the LOW-LOW and HI-HI boundary values. These values function identically to LOW and HI boundary values except these are absolute boundaries that can be set only from within the program.

**LANGUAGE:**

**DECLARATION:**

#HIHI

**REMARKS:**
The result of this directive is that the syntax for recipe arguments of type ANY are expanded to:

\[
\text{ANY } \text{name} = (\text{const1}<\text{const2}<\text{const3}<\text{const4}<\text{const5})
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const1</td>
<td>Default low-low limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const2</td>
<td>Default low limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const3</td>
<td>Default parameter value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const4</td>
<td>Default high value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const5</td>
<td>Default high-high value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any combination of default values may be specified by the program and is completely optional. For example:

1 - Low-low limit only.
<<3 - Value only.
<<<4 - High limit only.
<<3<<4 - Value, high, and high-high only.
1<2<3<4<5 - Low-low, low, value, high, and high-high.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**HISTORIAN BUFFER**

*variable*

**PURPOSE:**
HISTORIAN BUFFER is a built-in status variable that indicates the fraction of the historian event queue that is currently in use.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**
Not required.

**REFERENCES:**
The value is read by using HISTORIAN BUFFER in an expression. The range of the value is 0 through 1.0. The value 0 indicates that the buffer is empty or no historians are expected.

**Example:** WAIT UNTIL (HISTORIAN BUFFER < 0.5)
**HISTORIAN STATUS**

variable

**PURPOSE:**
HISTORIAN STATUS is a built-in status variable that indicates the summary status of the expected batch historians.

**LANGUAGE:**

| LANGUAGE | BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**
Not required.

**REFERENCES:**
The value is read by using HISTORIAN STATUS in an expression.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Good. At least one expected historian has good status (or no historians are expected).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bad. All expected historians have bad status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**
WAIT UNTIL (HISTORIAN STATUS IS GOOD)
WAIT WHILE (HISTORIAN STATUS)
Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE, FUNCTION GENERATOR, INTEGRATOR, MONITOR, RAMP DATA, or TIMER.
**HOLD LOGIC** section

**PURPOSE:** This statement marks the beginning of the hold logic section of a phase subroutine. This section provides the sequential control of an operation during the transition from normal execution to holding.

**LANGUAGE:**

**FORMAT:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOLD LOGIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: HOLD LOGIC

```
SET FIC401.CO = OPEN
SET FIC402.CO = CLOSED
```

**REMARKS:** This section is active during the transition from normal execution to holding. When the last statement of this section is executed, all phase activity is suspended until the phase is restarted. When the batch sequence mode is changed to run, sequential control is transferred to the restart logic (refer to Appendix A for details on parallel phase subroutine execution).
**PURPOSE:** The IF statement causes a single statement to be executed or passed over, based on a logical expression.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90    UDF
```

**FORMAT:**

```
IF (exp)  statement
```

Example:

```
IF (FC101.MODE IS MAN) SET FC101.MODE = AUTO
```

**REMARKS:** IF exp is true, the statement is executed; otherwise, the statement is not executed. If no statement is defined, no action is taken.
**IF THEN...ENDIF**

*control structure*

**PURPOSE:** The IF THEN statement causes a block of statements to be executed or passed over, based on a logical expression.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BATCH 90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

IF (exp) THEN

statement1

•

•

•

statementN

ENDIF

**Example:**

IF (FC101.MODE IS MAN) THEN

SET FC101.MODE = AUTO

SET FC101.CO = 50.0

ENDIF

**REMARKS:** If exp is true, statements 1 through N are executed; otherwise, statements 1 through N are skipped.
**PURPOSE:**
This statement causes one of two blocks of statements to be executed, and the other to be passed over, based on a logical expression.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

```
IF (exp) THEN
  statement T1
  ...
  statement TN
ELSE
  statement F1
  ...
  statement FN
ENDIF
```

**Example:**

```
IF (FLAG IS TRUE) THEN
  SET FC101.MODE = AUTO
  SET FC102.MODE = AUTO
ELSE
  SET FC101.MODE = MAN
  SET FC102.MODE = MAN
ENDIF
```

**REMARKS:**
If exp is true, statements T1 through TN are executed; otherwise, statements F1 through FN are executed.
#INCLUDE

directive

**PURPOSE:** The #INCLUDE directive tells the compiler to replace this line with the contents of a specified file.

**LANGUAGE:** 

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>UDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:** 

#INCLUDE (\path\filename)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>filename</td>
<td>Name of the file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: #INCLUDE (\BATCH\FILE.ABC)

**REMARKS:**

As the compiler processes a source file, it builds a temporary version of the file. The include directive affects only the temporary version. The original source file is not changed.

The purpose of this directive is to simplify the development of application standards. Include files provide a convenient means to maintain standard function, monitor, phase, or state subroutines for use in multiple Batch 90 and UDF programs. In this manner, the subroutine to open a valve (for example) can be written only once and included in each program application that needs this functionality.
**PURPOSE:**

The INPUT declaration provides an alternate means of declaring function blocks within the UDF language. The UDF language fully supports the function block declarations used in **DATA** and **FUNCTION**. Additionally, the INPUT declaration enables the declaration of function blocks without specific block address information. This functionality allows one UDF application to be implemented in many instances.

The INPUT declaration defines function blocks that have been configured as inputs to the UDF Type 1, UDF Type 2, or AUXILIARY UDF function blocks. Declared as an INPUT, the UDF program can manipulate these function blocks in the same way as the explicit declarations that included block address information (that is, BATCH DATA). All references and commands associated with the function code type are available to the UDF program.

**LANGUAGE:**

**DECLARATION:**

Function blocks must be declared before they can be accessed from an UDF program. The declarations can appear only in the data section.

\[
[AUX \ x] \ INPUT \ y \ name, \ FC = type
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUX x</td>
<td>Name of the auxiliary UDF function block that connects to the UDF type 1 or 2 function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>Input number of the UDF declaration function block or auxiliary UDF function block connected to the UDF type 1 or 2 function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name for the input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Function code acronym or function code number of the UDF type 1 or 2 function block connected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

AUX 1

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{INPUT 2 TIC503, FC = DD} \\
\text{INPUT 3 TIC501, FC = CS}
\end{align*}
\]

**REMARKS:**

For function block details, refer to:

- **AOL**  Analog exception report
- **APID**  Advanced PID
- **BBUF**  Boolean data buffer
- **BSEQ**  Batch sequence
- **CS**    Control station
- **DOL**   Digital exception report
**DD** Device driver  
**MSDD** Multi-state device driver  
**RBUF** Real data buffer  
**RCM** Remote control memory  
**REMSET** Remote manual set constant  
**RMC** Remote motor control  
**SMITH** Smith block  
**TEXT** Text
**INTEGRATOR**

data structure

**PURPOSE:** Integrators are active data structures. Integrators can be either local or global.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DECLARATION:** Integrators must be declared as follows:

**INTEGRATOR** *iname* (*input*, *units*)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>input</em></td>
<td>Name of value to be integrated. This name must refer to a data object that has already been declared (for example, batch data, data, phase subroutine, state subroutine, and local data).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *units*   | Units of time:  
|           | **SEC** Seconds.  
|           | **MIN** Minutes.  
|           | **HOUR** Hours.  |

Example:

INTEGRATOR TOTAL501 (*F1501.VAL*, **MIN**)  
INTEGRATOR INTGX (*X*, **SEC**)

When declared locally (in a phase or state subroutine) the integrator value is initialized to zero at the start of the subroutine.

**REFERENCE:** Integrator data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get value of integrator** *iname*.VAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em>.VAL</td>
<td>Current value of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  

X = INTG1.VAL

**Get status of integrator** *iname*.STS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *iname*.STS | Current status:  
|           | 0 = holding.  
|           | 1 = running. |
**INTEGRATOR (continued)**

**data structure**

**COMMANDS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start integrator</th>
<th><strong>START</strong> <em>iname</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** START INTG1

**NOTE:** This sets the status to running (value is not affected).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hold integrator</th>
<th><strong>HOLD</strong> <em>iname</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** HOLD INTG1

**NOTE:** This sets the status to holding (value is not affected).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reset integrator</th>
<th><strong>RESET</strong> <em>iname</em> (<em>exp</em>)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iname</em></td>
<td>Name of the integrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>exp</em></td>
<td>Initial integrator value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** RESET INTG1 (0)
LAST OPERATION

variable

**PURPOSE:**
LAST OPERATION and LAST OPERATION \((bseqx)\) are built-in read only variables that return the operation number of the last operation within the unit recipe being executed or within a unit recipe being executed by a specific BSEQ function block.

**LANGUAGE:**
[BATCH 90] [UDF]

**FORMAT:**
- **LAST OPERATION** - [for batch program looking at its own recipe]

- or -

- **LAST OPERATION** \((bseqx)\) - [for batch or UDF program looking at another BSEQ function block within the same MFP module]

**REMARKS:**
The LAST OPERATION variable returns the operation number of the final operation for the currently executing unit recipe. The number is returned when the variable LAST OPERATION is used in an expression.

Example: FINAL_OP_NUM = LAST OPERATION

**NOTE:** LAST OPERATION is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is LAST PHASE. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace OPERATION with PHASE.
LAST PHASE

variable

**NOTE:** LAST PHASE is an Elsag Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is LAST OPERATION. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, refer to *LAST OPERATION* and replace OPERATION with PHASE.
LAST SUBR

**Purpose:**
LAST SUBR and LAST SUBR (bseqx) are built-in read only variables that return the phase subroutine number of the last phase subroutine within the current operation of the unit recipe being executed or within a unit recipe being executed by a specific BSEQ function block.

**Language:**

| LANGUAGE | BATCH 90 | UDF |

**Format:**

LAST SUBR

- or -

LAST SUBR (bseqx)

**Remarks:**
The phase subroutine number of the last phase of the current operation is returned when LAST SUBR is used in an expression.

Example: NUM_PHASES = LAST SUBR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bseqx</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block that is executing the current unit recipe.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#LIST

directive

**PURPOSE:** The #LIST directive turns on the generation of the listing file if it was suspended by a #NOLIST directive. If the listing was not suspended, no action is taken.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
BATCH 90   UDF
```

**FORMAT:** #LIST
**LOT**

**variable**

**PURPOSE:** LOT is a built-in status variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** Not required.

**REFERENCES:** LOT ID is read by using LOT in an expression.

Examples:
- EXECUTION\_NO = LOT
- LOT\_STORAGE\_NO = LOT + 100

**REMARKS:** The Batch 90 language includes three built-in variables (BATCH, CAMPAIGN, and LOT). These variables may be used by the BHIST function block for record keeping, or by the CSEQ function block for controlling resource allocation. Refer to **BATCH** and **CAMPAIGN** statements.
#MAXPARALLEL

**directive**

**PURPOSE:** The #MAXPARALLEL directive specifies the maximum number of parallel phase subroutines permitted in an operation. The actual number of parallel phase subroutines in any operation is specified by the unit recipe.

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90 UDF

**FORMAT:**

```
#MAXPARALLEL = const
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Value from 1 through 32.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: #MAXPARALLEL = 3

**REMARKS:** The #MAXPARALLEL directive is optional. If not used, the value of #MAXPARALLEL defaults to 1. This parameter directly affects the amount of RAM memory that needs to be allocated for step data (corresponds to specification S12 of the BSEQ function code). The batch compiler calculates the minimum number of parallel phase subroutines required and displays that number at the end of the program listing.
PURPOSE: A monitor subroutine is a program unit that is similar, in some ways, to a function subroutine. Like a function subroutine, a monitor subroutine is defined once and may be called many times. The definition may be thought of as a template and each call is an independent instance (use) of the template.

There are two major characteristics that distinguish a monitor subroutine from a function subroutine.

1. A monitor subroutine executes in parallel with the active phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutine.

2. The call to a monitor subroutine is a data declaration (rather than an executable statement).

Monitor subroutines are typically used to watch for abnormal conditions while a phase or state subroutine performs the sequential part of an operation procedure.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

REMARKS: The call to a monitor subroutine may be declared in the local data of a phase or state subroutine or in a data section. If the call is in a phase or state subroutine, then the instance of the monitor subroutine is local to the phase or state subroutine. It exists only while the phase or state subroutine is active (running or holding). If the call is in a data section, then that instance of the monitor subroutine is global and exists all the while the program is active (running or holding).

Each instance of a monitor subroutine has an execution status - running or stopped. The active phase or state subroutine may stop or start each instance of a monitor subroutine. Once a global instance of a monitor subroutine is started, it will continue to run until commanded to stop by the active phase or state subroutine or the program completes. It may run across operations and will run even while the active phase or state subroutine is holding.

Once a local (instance of a) monitor subroutine is started, it will continue to run until one of the following occurs:

- It is commanded to stop by the active phase or state subroutine.
- The operation ends.
The status of the active phase or state subroutine changes from running to holding (that is, a local monitor subroutine does not run while the phase or state subroutine is holding). When the phase or state subroutine status changes back to running, the monitor subroutine will automatically resume running (if the monitor subroutine status was running).

If a monitor definition contains data declarations, then each instance of the monitor subroutine has its own unique data space for that data. Refer to Figure 4-5 for the basic structure of a monitor subroutine.

### MONITOR Subroutine Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of this subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typeN</td>
<td>Data type of the Nth formal parameter. Available data types are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANY: Any data type or expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AOL: Analog exception report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>APID: Advanced PID controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ARRAY: Any array type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BBUF: Boolean data buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BLOCK: Function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS: Control station block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSEQ: Common sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DATAEXPT: User defined data export block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DD: Device driver block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**MONITOR** (continued)

*subroutine*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>typeN (continued)</td>
<td>DOL Digital exception report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FGEN Function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INTEGRATOR Integrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MSDD Multi-state device driver block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAMP Ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RBUF Real data buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RCM Remote control memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REMSET Remote manual set constant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RMC Remote motor control block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SMITH Smith controller block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TEXT Text block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TIMER Timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR Variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pname Local name assigned to the nth formal parameter.

Example: MONITOR CHK_TOTAL
              BLOCK FLOW
              INTEGRATOR AMOUNT
              VAR LIMIT

**REMARKS:**

While there is no fixed limit on the number of parameters, the subroutine can have only one parameter per line. The parameter list is terminated by the start of the next section.

When a formal parameter is any array, the parameter specification must indicate the number of dimensions as follows:

VAR ARRAY fnameN (*....)
CONST ARRAY fname (*....)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(*....)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions. (that is, (<em>), (</em>) or (*, *, *))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARAMETER REFERENCES:**

The formal parameter list defines the local parameter names (those used inside the monitor subroutine). Each formal parameter can be thought of as a placeholder for an actual parameter. The actual parameters are specified when the monitor subroutine is declared (either in a data section or in a step or state subroutine). Each actual parameter refers to a value (type ANY) or to some object of data (for example, timer, variable, function block). When the monitor subroutine is called, each reference to a formal parameter becomes a reference to the corresponding actual parameter.
**Example:** Consider the following monitor subroutine:

```plaintext
MONITOR CHK_TIMER
TIMER TIM
VAR LIMIT
VAR STATUS
CONTINUOUS

IF (TIM.VAL < LIMIT) THEN
   STATUS = 0
ELSE
   STATUS = 1
STOP TIM
ENDIF
ENDSUBR CHK_TIMER
```

Consider the following PHASE or STATE subroutine declaration:

```plaintext
DECLARATIONS:
VAR TIM_LIMIT
VAR TIM_STS
TIMER TIMER1 (SEC)
MONITOR CHK_TIMER (TIMER1, TIM_LIMIT, TIM_STS) ALIAS CHK_TIME1
```

**DECLARATIONS:**

The declarations statement marks the beginning of the declaration section of the monitor subroutine. This section specifies data local to the monitor subroutine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nameN</td>
<td>Name of Nth data object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typeN</td>
<td>Data type of the Nth data object. Available data types are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONSTANT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CONST STRING ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BLOCK ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: DECLARATIONS
VAR COUNTER
CONST INDEX = 1.0

The monitor local data exists for the entire length of time the monitor subroutine exists. Starting and stopping a monitor subroutine does not affect its local data.

REFERENCES:

Get monitor status  name.STS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name or ALIAS of the monitor call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.STS</td>
<td>Monitor status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = MON_LEVEL1.STS

SELF-REFERENCING:

A self-referencing feature allows a monitor subroutine to stop its own execution. For example:

```
MONITOR monitor_name
  CONTINUOUS
  statement1
  ...
  ...
  HOLD monitor_name
ENDSUBR monitor_name
```

Any logic statements appearing after an unconditional HOLD monitor_name statement will never be executed and shall marked as such by the compiler.
**MONITOR**

**declaration**

**PURPOSE:** The monitor declaration is used to specify a call to a monitor subroutine. Each declaration represents a separate call and has a parameter list that specifies the actual parameters that are passed to the monitor subroutine. This parameter list must match the formal parameter list of the specified monitor subroutine in number and types of parameters.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
DECLARATION: MONITOR name (param1, param2, ...paramN) init[ ALIAS name2]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the monitor subroutine to be called. The specified monitor subroutine must already be defined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paramN</td>
<td>Nth actual parameter. Each parameter must specify a data object which has already been declared in local or batch data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>init</td>
<td>Initial status (running or stopped). If no status is specified, running is assumed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name2</td>
<td>Name used to identify this call to a monitor subroutine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- MONITOR STATUS (FV211, FV215, FC534) RUNNING
- MONITOR MON_LEVEL (TMR501, LIC501) STOPPED \\ ALIAS MON_LEVEL_1

**COMMANDS:** The following commands control the execution status of monitor subroutines.

**Start**

```
START name
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the monitor subroutine or name of alias.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
START MON_LEVEL
```

**NOTE:** This command changes the monitor subroutines status from stopped to running (the command has no effect if the status is already running). This command simply changes the status of the monitor subroutine - it does not immediately execute the monitor subroutine. The monitor subroutine will execute during the next function block cycle.
**Hold**  

**HOLD**  

**Parameter**  | **Description**  
--- | ---  
**name** | Name of the monitor subroutine or name of alias.  

**Example:**  

HOLD MON_LEVEL  

**NOTE:** This command changes the status from running to stopped. It has no effect if the status is stopped. A monitor can set itself to the hold condition.
**MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER**

function block

**PURPOSE:** Multi-state device drivers (function code 129) are used to control devices with up to four states, three outputs, and four feedbacks. Applications of this function block are multi-state motors (fast, slow and stopped), valves with bidirectional motors (forward, reverse and stop states), etc. As with the device driver, function code 129 does the low level interlocking (confirmation of state within feedback time).

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** A multi-state device driver (MSDD) function block must be declared before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The declaration must appear in the data section of a program. Batch 90 and UDF languages can only manipulate multi-state device drivers in which specifications S1 and S2 are set to zero.

**BLOCK**

\[
\text{msddname}, \text{BLK} = \text{const}, \text{FC} = \text{MSDD}, [\text{WATCH}]
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATCH</td>
<td>Specifies that the multi-state device driver is to be placed on watch upon program start-up. If WATCH is not specified, the multi-state device driver will be off watch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:** Multi-state device driver data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get control output \( \text{msddname.CO} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msddname.CO</td>
<td>Control output state (0 - 3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
IF (FV501.CO IS 2) THEN
```

Example: BLOCK FAN, BLK = 100, FC = MSDD
### Multi-State Device Driver (continued)

**Function block**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname</code></td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `msddname.STS` | Status:  
0 = good.  
1 = bad.  
2 = waiting. |

Example:  
```
IF (FV501.STS IS BAD) THEN
```

**Get mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname</code></td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `msddname.MODE` | Mode:  
0 = manual.  
1 = auto. |

Example:  
```
IF (FV501.MODE IS 0) THEN
```

**Get feedback values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname</code></td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname.FBV</code></td>
<td>Feedback values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
```
IF (FV501.FBV = 1001) THEN  
IF (DIGIT (FV501.FBV,2)) = 1 THEN
```

**NOTE:** The four feedback values are encoded into a single 4-digit number with each digit representing an individual feedback value. The most significant digit is associated with feedback 1, the next digit with feedback 2 and so on.

**Get feedback targets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname</code></td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>msddname.FBT</code></td>
<td>Feedback target values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
```
IF (FB501.FBV = FB501.FBT) THEN
```

**NOTE:** The four target values are encoded into a single 4-digit number with each digit representing an individual target value. The most significant digit is associated with target 1, the next digit with target 2 and so on.
FUNCTION LIBRARY

MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER (continued)

function block

COMMANDS: The following commands are used to control multi-state device drivers.

Set control output

SET msddname.CO = exp [No Wait]

- or -

SET AND WAIT msddname.CO = exp [Wait for confirmation]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Control output value (0 - 3).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET FV501.CO = 2

NOTE: The operation of this command depends on the mode and tracking status of the function block.

1. If the mode is auto, the control output state is set to exp.

2. If the mode is not auto and tracking is disabled, exp is recorded inside the function block, but the control output state is not updated. If the mode is later changed to auto, then the control output state is updated.

3. If the mode is not auto and tracking is enabled, the command has no effect.

The SET AND WAIT version of this command performs this operation and then waits for confirmation (that is, the control output state is equal to exp and the feedback status is good). The command retries the operation (once per cycle while waiting). Confirmation does not require that the mode is auto. It requires that only the feedback status is good and the control output is in the specified state.

The SET version performs the same operation but does not wait.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER** (continued)

*function block*

---

**Set mode**

```plaintext
SET  msddname.MODE = exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Mode: 0 = manual. 1 = auto.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

SET FV501.MODE = AUTO

**Set status override**

```plaintext
SET  msddname.OVR = exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Override status: 0 = off. 1 = on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

SET FV501.OVR = ON

**Set control output track flag**

```plaintext
SET  msddname.TRK = exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>msddname</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>msddname.TRK</td>
<td>Control output tracking flag: 0 = disable. 1 = enable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

SET FV501.TRK = 1

**NOTES:**

1. The purpose of control output tracking is to provide a bumpless transfer of the control output during a mode change from manual to auto. In manual mode, the operator controls the control output value. If tracking is disabled and the mode is changed from manual to auto, the control output will go to the last value that was written to the block by the program (that is, the control output may bump). If tracking is enabled, the control output value will remain unchanged during the mode change.

2. The initial value of tracking status (when the MFP module is placed into the execute mode) is off.
MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER (continued)

function block

Set watch status (Batch 90 only)

**SET**  \( msddname.WATCH = exp \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( msddname )</td>
<td>Name of the MSDD function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>Batch Historian watch status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \( \text{SET FV501.WATCH} = \text{exp} \)

**REMARKS:**

These commands are buffered within the function block and do not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
**PURPOSE:**
This statement terminates the current operation and activates another operation.

**LANGUAGE:**

**FORMAT:**

```
NEXT OPERATION [exp]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Number of operation to be activated. If exp is not specified, then the next sequential operation is activated (that is, current phase + 1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

```
NEXT OPERATION
NEXT OPERATION 10
```

**REMARKS:**
If the value of the exp is greater than the number of operations called for the unit recipe, then the unit recipe is complete (that is, a done statement will be executed).

**NOTES:**
1. If the value of the exp is equal to the current operation number, then control will transfer to the top of continuous logic. If the next operation statement is in continuous logic it will prevent normal logic from being executed. This has the effect of freezing the program.

2. NEXT OPERATION is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is NEXT PHASE. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace OPERATION with PHASE.
**NOTE:** NEXT PHASE is an Elsag Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is NEXT OPERATION. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, refer to **NEXT OPERATION** and replace OPERATION with PHASE.
**NEXT STATE**

statement

**PURPOSE:**
This statement terminates the current state subroutine and activates another state subroutine.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90  | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

```plaintext
NEXT STATE  name
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the state subroutine to be activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
NEXT STATE MOTORSTOP
```
#NOLIST

directive

**PURPOSE:** The #NOLIST directive turns off the generation of the listing file. This directive is useful if long #INCLUDE files are being used in a number of programs and their listings were unnecessary.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:** #NOLIST

**NOTE:** The listing will remain off until a #LIST directive is seen. Any errors detected by the compiler are still displayed.
PURPOSE: This statement marks the beginning of a phase (Batch90) or state (UDF) subroutine's normal logic section. This section provides the normal sequential control of a phase subroutine (Batch 90) or state subroutine (UDF).

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

FORMAT: NORMAL LOGIC
statement

REMARKS: This section executes when the phase or state subroutine is active and the operation is in the normal mode. When the phase or state subroutine is first activated, the normal logic statement begins executing at the first statement. It continues to execute statement by statement until either the last statement or a next operation statement is executed or the mode is changed from normal to fault or hold (refer to Appendix A for details for parallel operation).

Example: NORMAL LOGIC
START TIMER1
SET FIC501.CO = OPEN
WAIT UNTIL ((LT501 >= 45.0) OR (TIMER1.VAL >= 30))
SET FIC501.CO = CLOSED
NORMALIZE STRING

command

**PURPOSE:**
This command removes all leading and trailing blank spaces from a variable string. Multiple spaces between characters and tabs will be replaced with one space. The resultant string is stored in the original variable string.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATC H 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of a variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

NORMALIZE (REQUIRED_ACTION)
**OPERATION**

**PURPOSE:**
OPERATION is a built-in status variable. OPERATION indicates the current operation number being executed by the batch sequence block.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**
Not required.

**REFERENCES:**
The operation number may be read by using OPERATION in an expression.

**Example:**

```
IF (OPERATION > 0) THEN
```

**REMARKS:**
OPERATION may be used to determine the current operation number being executed. For example, if the batch sequence function block is executing phase subroutines in parallel (that is, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, etc.) OPERATION returns only the whole number portion of the operation number (OPERATION = 3). Refer to the **PHASE NUMBER** statement.

**NOTE:**
OPERATION is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is PHASE. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace OPERATION with PHASE.
OPERATION DESCRIPTOR

**function**

**PURPOSE:** To retrieve the operation descriptor from the current unit recipe executing in a BSEQ function block.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from a Batch 90 program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR ( (\text{exp}, \text{vstring}) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from a UDF or other Batch 90 program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR ( (\text{bseqx}, \text{exp}, \text{vstring}) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Number of the operation from which the descriptor is desired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstring</td>
<td>Variable string (capable of storing at least 64 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bseqx</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O\_NUM} & = -1 \\
\text{REPEAT} \\
\; & \text{O\_NUM} = \text{O\_NUM} + 1 \\
\; & \text{OPERATION DESCRIPTOR (O\_NUM, O\_DECS (O\_NUM))} \\
\text{UNTIL} & \left((\text{O\_NUM} \geq \text{LAST OPERATION}) \text{ OR } (\text{ONUM} > 19)\right)
\end{align*}
\]

**REMARKS:**
The OPERATION DESCRIPTOR is entered using the unit procedure editor (UPE) or the optional master recipe editor (MRE). Each operation within a unit recipe has a descriptor that can be up to 64 characters long.

**NOTE:** OPERATION DESCRIPTOR is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is PHASE DESCRIPTOR. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace OPERATION with PHASE.
**OUTPUT declaration**

**PURPOSE:** The OUTPUT declaration assigns a name to UDF Type 1, UDF Type 2, and AUXILIARY UDF function block outputs. The name specified in the declaration is used by UDF commands to write values to the function block output.

**LANGUAGE:**

**DECLARATION:** An output statement is necessary to declare any output from the UDF declaration function block. An output statement defines a boolean or real value depending upon the UDF function block type. The declaration can appear only in the data section.

```
[AUX x] OUTPUT y name
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUX x</td>
<td>Name of the auxiliary UDF function block that connects to the UDF Type 1 or 2 function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>Output of either the UDF declaration function block or auxiliary UDF function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name for the output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- AUX 1
  - OUTPUT 2 PV501
  - OUTPUT 3 PV503

- AUX 2
  - OUTPUT 1 FV40
  - OUTPUT 2 FV42

**COMMANDS:** The SET command is used to write a value to the function block output.

**Set output value**

```
SET name.VAL = exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>UDF function block output name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Output value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- SET PV501.VAL = 75.5
- SET FV42.VAL = ON
**PHASE**

*statement*

**NOTE:** PHASE is an Elsag Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is OPERATION. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, refer to *OPERATION* and replace OPERATION with PHASE.
NOTE: PHASE DESCRIPTOR is an Elsag Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is OPERATION DESCRIPTOR. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, refer to OPERATION DESCRIPTOR and replace OPERATION with PHASE.
**PHASE NUMBER**

*variable*

**PURPOSE:** PHASE NUMBER is a built-in status variable. PHASE NUMBER indicates the phase number of the active phase subroutine.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:** Not required.

**REFERENCES:** The phase number may be read by using PHASE NUMBER in an expression.

**Example:** IF (PHASE NUMBER > 1) THEN

**REMARKS:** The phase number is the decimal portion of the operation number. For example, if the second phase subroutine of operation 3 is active (3.2), then OPERATION is 3 and PHASE NUMBER is 2.

**NOTE:** PHASE NUMBER is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is SUBPHASE. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace PHASE NUMBER with SUBPHASE.
A phase subroutine is a major unit of a batch program. It is responsible for controlling the sequence of activities within a phase.

Each operation of a unit recipe specifies the names of the phase subroutines that are to be executed for that operation. The unit recipe also specifies a list of formulation data. When an operation becomes active, the specified phase subroutines are called and the formulation data is passed to them (via the parameter list of each phase subroutine). When the phase subroutines complete their activities, control is passed to the next operation.

There is no limit to the amount of times a phase subroutine may be called.

Figure 4-6 shows the general structure of a phase subroutine.

PHASE SUBR

subroutine

**PURPOSE:**

A phase subroutine heading defines the name of the subroutine and its formal parameters. When a phase subroutine is called, a list of formulation data is passed from the unit recipe to the phase subroutine. The phase comment is an optional 1400 character field that can be viewed as help information from the recipe editor. The parameter list defines the names to

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90  UDF

**HEADING:**

A phase subroutine heading defines the name of the subroutine and its formal parameters. When a phase subroutine is called, a list of formulation data is passed from the unit recipe to the phase subroutine. The phase comment is an optional 1400 character field that can be viewed as help information from the recipe editor. The parameter list defines the names to
be used within the phase subroutine for the individual items of formulation data. The heading format is:

```
PHASE SUBR name
  type1 pname1
  type2 pname2
  ...

Example: PHASE SUBR ADD_COMPONENT_A
  ANY RATE_A = (100<500<1000)
  ANY TOTAL_A = (MIN_CHRG, NORMAL_CHRG, MAX_CHRG)
  DD VALVE_A = (PV51, FV52)
  STRING INAME = “COMMENT ID #XXX”
```

**REMARKS:**

1. Parameter list is terminated by the start of the next section (that is, declarations).
2. There can be no more than 100 parameters.

3. Parameters with data type ANY or BLOCK can only be read by the subroutine. They cannot be modified.

**ARGUMENT INITIALIZATION:**

The formal arguments to a phase subroutine can be given initial values. These values are used as the default value by the unit procedure editor when preparing a unit procedure operation for this phase subroutine.

**FORMAT:**

For an argument of type ANY the following combination is allowed:

\[
\text{ANY }\text{p} \text{nameN} = (\text{const1} < \text{const2} < \text{const3})
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>const1</td>
<td>Default low limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const2</td>
<td>Default value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const3</td>
<td>Default high limit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any combination is allowed (1 < 2 < 3).

- (1) - Low only
- (< 2) - Value only.
- (< < 3) - High only.
- (1 < < 3) - Low and high.
- (1 < 2 < 3) - Low, value, and high.

Refer to `#HIHI` for low-low and hi-hi parameter details. For function block arguments, it is possible to specify a function block name or number of the proper type.

**Example:**

DD D1 = (DD_1)
RBUF B1 = (127)

**ARGUMENT SELECTION LIST:**

For an argument of data type ANY a list of allowable entries will be defined. When preparing a unit procedure, the unit procedure editor presents a list of the only valid inputs for the argument.

**FORMAT:**

\[
\text{ANY }\text{p} \text{nameN} = (\text{const1}, \text{const2} [...\text{constN})}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>constN</td>
<td>Name of a constant declared in the batch data section of the program, or a Batch 90 reserved constant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

ANY COLOR_CHOICE = (RED, BLUE, MAGENTA)
The .HLIM and .LLIM reference extensions allow a program to read the high and low limits of recipe ANY parameters.

REFERENCES:

Get low limit

pname.LLIM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pname</td>
<td>Name of the parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.LLIM</td>
<td>Low limit value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Get high limit

pname.HLIM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pname</td>
<td>Name of the parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.HLIM</td>
<td>High limit value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
PHASE_SUBR EXAMPLE_SUBR
ANY TGT_RATE
NORMAL_LOGIC
    SET SETPOINT_MIN.VAL = TGT_RATE.LLIM
    SET SETPOINT_MAX.VAL = TGT_RATE.HLIM
    ·
    ·
ENDSUBR
```

REMARKS:

The values returned by .LLIM and .HLIM are the low limit and high limit values specified by the active unit procedure.

DECLARATIONS:

This section specifies local data and calls to monitor subroutines. The format is:

```
type1 name1
·
·
typeN nameN
```
PHASE SUBR (continued)

subroutine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>May be any one of the following: ARRAY, CONST, CONST STRING, FGEN, INTEGRATOR, MONITOR, RAMP, TIMER, VAR, VAR STRING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Local name assigned to the nth parameter. The nth parameter corresponds to the nth item in the unit procedures list of formulation data. The name is restricted to a maximum of 32 characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

```
DECLARATIONS
  VAR COUNTER
  ONST MIN_LIMIT = 3.0
  TIMER TMR (MIN)
  INTEGRATOR INTG1
  FGEN PROFILE1 ((0.0, 80.0), (30.0, 100.0), (60.0, 80.9))
  RAMP LEVEL RAMP (LIC501.SP, SEC)
  MONITOR MON1 (FC211, FC215, FC534)
```

NOTES:

1. The phase subroutines local data exists only while the operation is active.

2. PHASE SUBR is an ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling with Elsag Bailey specific terms. The Elsag Bailey specific term is STEP SUBR. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, replace PHASE with STEP.
**PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR**

function

**PURPOSE:** To retrieve the program descriptor from the current Batch 90 program executing in a BSEQ function block.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from a Batch 90 program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR (vstring)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from a UDF program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR (bseqx, vstring)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstring</td>
<td>Name of the variable string (capable of storing at least 64 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bseqx</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PURPOSE:**
The ramp is an active data structure that changes a control station set point at a uniform rate over time.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LANGUAGE</th>
<th>BATCH 90</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DECLARATION:**
The ramp declaration format is:

```
RAMP rname (vname, units)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rname</td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vname</td>
<td>Name of the value to be ramped. This value must be one of the following types: AOL.VAL, CS.CO, CS.SP, REMSET.VAL, RBUF.VAL, VAR (or an array element of one of the above types)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>units</td>
<td>Units of time: SEC (Seconds), MIN (Minutes), HOUR (Hours)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCE:**
Ramp data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get value**

```
 rname.VAL
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rname</td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rname.VAL</td>
<td>Current value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
X = TEMP_RAMP.VAL
```
**RAMP DATA** (continued)

**data structure**

**Get status**  
`rname.STS`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `rname.STS`| Current status:  
0 = holding.  
1 = running. |

**Example:**  
IF (TEMP_RAMP.STS IS RUNNING) THEN

**Get upper limit**  
`rname.LIM`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>rname.LIM</code></td>
<td>Upper limit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  
IF (TEMP_RAMP.LIM > 150) THEN

**Get rate**  
`rname.RATE`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>rname.RATE</code></td>
<td>Rate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  
IF (TEMP_RAMP.RATE > 2.5) THEN

**COMMANDS:**

**Start**  
`START rname FROM exp1 TO exp2 AT exp3`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp1</code></td>
<td>Initial ramp value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp2</code></td>
<td>Upper limit of ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp3</code></td>
<td>Rate of change.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This command changes the status from holding to running;  
has no effect if status is running.

**Example:**  
START LEVEL_RAMP FROM 10.0 TO 15.8 AT 0.5

**NOTE:**  
If the ramp rate is positive (that is, from a low initial value to a  
higher final value) then the rate (exp3) must reflect this by being a  
positive number. Similarly, if the ramp is negative (that is, from a  
high initial value to a lower final value) then the rate (exp3) must be  
negative.
### Hold

**Hold**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  

```
HOLD LEVEL_RAMP
```

This command changes the status from running to holding; has no effect if status is not running.

### Resume ramp

**Resume ramp**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rname</code></td>
<td>Name of the ramp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  

```
RESUME LEVEL_RAMP
```

This command changes the status from holding to running; has no effect if status is not holding.
**RBUF**

Refer to *DATA BUFFER*. 
PURPOSE: To retrieve the unit recipe descriptor from the current unit recipe executing in a BSEQ function block.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

DECLARATION: (from a Batch 90 program)

\[
\text{RECIPE DESCRIPTOR (\text{\textit{const}}, \text{\textit{vstring}})}
\]

(from a UDF program)

\[
\text{RECIPE DESCRIPTOR (\text{\textit{bseqx}}, \text{\textit{const}}, \text{\textit{vstring}})}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Line type of the description to be returned. Descriptions that can be returned are: 1 = unit procedure description. 2 = unit description. 3 = equipment list description. 4 = master recipe description. 5 = train description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstring</td>
<td>Name of the variable string (capable of storing at least 64 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bseqx</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: RECIPE DESCRIPTOR = (1, REC_DESC_STRING) RECIPE DESCRIPTOR = (3, EQ_LIST_STRING)
**PURPOSE:** To read descriptors from files in the Batch\UDF directory of the MFP module. This function enables a Batch 90 program to read all of the files contained in the Batch\UDF file directory and return their file ID and descriptor.

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATION:**

```plaintext
RECIPE ENTRY (const1, exp1, var1, vstring, var2)
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>const1</td>
<td>Line type of the description to be returned. Descriptions that can be returned are: 1 = unit recipe description. 2 = unit description. 3 = equipment list description. 4 = master recipe description. 5 = train description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>The address of the BSEQ function block that contains the specified unit recipe descriptors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var1</td>
<td>Numeric variable used to track position in the batch directory. The value of the variable at the beginning of execution specifies the starting position for the directory search. Upon completion, the command will return a: x = current directory position. 0 = end of the batch directory. -1 = file error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstring</td>
<td>Name of the variable string (capable of storing at least 64 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>var2</td>
<td>Numeric variable used by the command to return the unit procedure ID associated with the unit procedure file selected by the search.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Read the unit recipe descriptors for the first ten unit recipes associated with function block 100. RDESCS is a variable string array of ten elements and RIDS is a numeric variable array of ten elements.

```plaintext
FUNCTION GET_DESCRS
DECLARATIONS
    VAR NDEX
    VAR D_POSN
    VAR STRING ARRAY RDESCS (1:10)
    VAR ARRAY RIDS (1:10)
EXECUTABLE
    BNUM = 100
    NDEX = 0
```
D_POSN = 0
REPEAT
   D_POSN = D_POSN + 1
   NDEX = NDEX + 1
   RECIPE ENTRY (1, B_NUM, D_POSN, \n                   RDESCS (NDEX), RIDS (NDEX))
UNTIL ((D_POSN <= 0) OR (NDEX > 10))
ENDSUBR GET_DESCRS
REMOTE CONTROL MEMORY

function block

PURPOSE:
The remote control memory (RCM) function block (function code 62) acts as a remotely operated switch (controlled by an OIS console).

LANGUAGE:

DECLARATION:
The RCM function block must be declared before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The declaration can appear only in the data section.

BLOCK name, BLK = const, FC = RCM [, WATCH]

REFERENCES:
RCM data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get output value name.VAL

COMMANDS:
Set output SET name.VAL = exp

Parameter Description
name Name of the RCM function block.
const Function block address.
WATCH (Batch 90 only) The RCM function block to be placed on WATCH by the Batch Historian upon program start-up. If not specified, the RCM function block will be off watch.

Example: BLOCK RCM501, BLK = 100, FC = RCM

Example: IF (RCM501.VAL=ON) THEN

Example: IF (RCM501.VAL=ON) THEN

Examples: SET RCM501.VAL = ON
            SET RCM501.VAL = 1
Set watch status  
(Batch 90 only)  

**SET** \( \text{rcmname.WATCH} = \ exp \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>rcmname</code></td>
<td>Name of the RCM function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp</code></td>
<td>Batch Historian watch status: (&lt;0 = \text{off}, 1 = \text{on}&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
**SET** RCM501.WATCH = ON

**REMARKS:**  
The RCM function block treats these commands as if they were issued by an OIS console. For example, the command is ignored if the function blocks permissive input does not allow the command. These commands are buffered within the function block and do not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
REMOTE MANUAL SET CONSTANT

function block

**PURPOSE:** A remote manual set constant (REMSET) function block (function code 68) provides a way for an operator to set a constant in an MFP module (via the OIS console).

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATION:** The REMSET function block must be declared before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The declaration can appear only in the data section.

**BLOCK** name, BLK = const, FC = REMSET[, WATCH]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the REMSET function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WATCH** (Batch 90 only) Specifies that the REMSET function block is to be placed on watch by the Batch Historian upon program start-up. If not specified, the REMSET function block will be off watch.

Example: BLOCK RSET501, BLK = 100, FC = REMSET

**REFERENCES:** REMSET data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get output value **name.VAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the REMSET function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.VAL</td>
<td>Output value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = RSET501.VAL

**COMMANDS:**

Set output **SET name.VAL = exp**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the REMSET function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET RSET501.VAL = 100
Set watch status (Batch 90 only)  

**SET**  

\[ name.WATCH = exp \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the REMSET function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Batch Historian watch status:  
            | 0 = off. |
            | 1 = on. |

Example:  

SET REMSET501.WATCH = ON

**REMARKS:**  
The REMSET function block treats the set output command as if it were issued by an OIS console. For example, the command is ignored if the function block is in track mode. This command is buffered within the function block and does not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
REMOTE MOTOR CONTROL

function block

PURPOSE: The remote motor control (RMC) function block (function code 136) is used by an operator or a batch program to control a motor.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

DECLARATION: Specifications S1 and S2 of an RMC function block determine whether its control output is controlled by the batch program or by function blocks. If both specifications are set to two, the batch program has control.

BLOCK name, BLK = const, FC = RMC[, WATCH]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATCH</td>
<td>Specifies that the RMC function block is to be placed on watch by the Batch Historian upon program start up. If not specified, the RMC function block will be off watch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: BLOCK MOTOR501, BLK = 240, FC = RMC

REFERENCES: RMC data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get control output name.CO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.CO</td>
<td>Control output value (0, 1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = MOTOR501.STS

Get control output status name.STS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.STS</td>
<td>Control output status: 0 = good. 1 = bad. 2 = waiting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = MOTOR501.STS
REMOTEMOTORCONTROL(continued)

functionblock

Get feedback values \(name\_FBn\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>Feedback number (1 or 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(name_FBn)</td>
<td>Feedback value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\(X = MOTOR501.FB1\)
\(Y = MOTOR501.FB2\)

Get interlock values \(name\_ILKn\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>Interlock number (1, 2, 3, or 4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(name_ILKn)</td>
<td>Interlock value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\(X = MOTOR501.ILK1\)
\(Y = MOTOR501.ILK4\)

Get permissive values \(name\_PERMn\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>Permissive number (1 or 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(name_PERMn)</td>
<td>Permissive value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\(X = MOTOR501.PERM1\)
\(Y = MOTOR501.PERM2\)

**COMMANDS:**
The following statement are used to control RMC function blocks.

Set control output \(SET\ name\_CO = exp\)

- or -

\(SET\ AND\ WAIT\ name\_CO = exp\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(name)</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(exp)</td>
<td>Control output value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

\(SET\ MOTOR501.CO = ON\)
**Remote Motor Control (continued)**

*Function block*

Set watch status
(Batch 90 only)

**SET**  
\[ \text{name.WATCH} = \text{exp} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the RMC function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Batch Historian watch status:  
            0 = off.  
            1 = on. |

**Example:**  
SET \( \text{RMC501.WATCH} = \text{ON} \)

**Remarks:**
The first form of the statement (SET) writes the control output value to the block and continues on to the next statement. The second form (SET AND WAIT) writes the control outputs value to the function block and then waits for confirmation (that is, the function blocks control output value is the same as exp and the control output status is good). The statement retries the operation once per function block cycle while waiting.
**PURPOSE:**
This statement continuously executes a block of statements until some condition becomes true.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

```
REPEAT
  statement1
  ...
  ...
  statementN
UNTIL (exp)
```

Example:
```
START TIMER1
REPEAT
  ...
  ...
UNTIL (TIMER1.VAL >= 30.0)
```

**REMARKS:**
Statements 1 through N are executed. If exp is FALSE, statements 1 through N are executed and exp is evaluated again. This continues until exp becomes true. If exp is TRUE, execution continues at statement following UNTIL.

A repeat loop can be terminated by a break statement.

The program is suspended for one cycle each time the exp is evaluated (including the first time). The suspension occurs before evaluating exp. This statement should not be used where execution is continuous (for example, in a monitor subroutine).
RESERVE

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
Refer to FUNCTION GENERATOR, INTEGRATOR, and TIMER.
**RESTART**

*statement*

**PURPOSE:**
This statement transfers control from the FAULT LOGIC to the RESTART LOGIC.

**LANGUAGE:**
BATCH 90 UDF

**FORMAT:**
RESTART

Example: RESTART

**REMARKS:**
If there is no RESTART LOGIC, control is transferred to the beginning of NORMAL LOGIC or the last executed restart point.

The RESTART statement can be used only in the FAULT LOGIC of a phase subroutine. It cannot be used in a function or monitor subroutine.
PURPOSE: This statement marks the beginning of the restart logic section of a phase subroutine. This section provides the sequential control of an operation during the transition from hold to normal.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 UDF

FORMAT: RESTART LOGIC
  statement
  
  statement

Example: RESTART LOGIC
  SET FIC401.CO = OPEN
  SET FIC402.CO = CLOSED
  RESUME AT MAJOR POINT

REMARKS: This section is activated when the batch sequence mode is changed from holding to normal. This section must contain at least one RESUME statement. When a RESUME statement is executed, control is transferred to the normal logic at the appropriate restart point.

When this section is first activated, fault mode is disabled. If desired, fault mode may be enabled anywhere in this section by an ENABLE FAULT CODE statement. Otherwise, fault mode is automatically enabled when control is transferred back to the normal logic.
**RESTART POINT**

*statement*

**PURPOSE:** The RESTART POINT statement marks a restart point in the normal logic of a phase subroutine.

**LANGUAGE:**

- **MAJOR RESTART POINT** \( id \)

- or -

- **MINOR RESTART POINT** \( id \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( id )</td>
<td>Positive integer that uniquely identifies this point in normal logic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

Examples:  
MAJOR RESTART POINT 102  
MINOR RESTART POINT 3

**REMARKS:**

This statement may be used only in the normal logic of a phase subroutine.

The normal logic may contain many MAJOR and MINOR RESTART POINT statements. However, at any given time, there is only one active major restart point and one active minor restart point.

When a phase subroutine is first activated, both active restart points are at the first statement of the normal logic. If a MAJOR RESTART POINT statement is executed, both active restart points move to that statement. If a minor restart point statement is executed, only the active minor restart point moves to that statement.

If the normal logic is interrupted (that is, the mode is changed to FAULT or HOLD), the current restart state is maintained. If the phase subroutine is restarted, then the restart logic may specify where to resume the normal logic based on the restart state (refer to the **RESUME AT** statement).
Refer to **RAMP DATA**.
**RESUME AT**

This statement transfers control from the restart logic to the appropriate normal logic statement.

**LANGUAGE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batch</th>
<th>UDF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>UDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

- RESUME AT MAJOR POINT
- RESUME AT MINOR POINT
- RESUME AT *id*

**Examples:**

- RESUME AT MAJOR POINT
  - (restart at active major restart point)
- RESUME AT MINOR POINT
  - (restart at active minor restart point)
- RESTART AT 101
  - (restart at restart point with *id* of 101)

**REMARKS:**

If an *id* is specified, control is transferred to the normal logic restart point statement with the specified ID. Otherwise, control is transferred to the normal logic at the specified (major or minor) active restart point.

The RESUME AT statement can be used only in the restart logic of a phase subroutine. It cannot be used in any other phase, monitor, or function subroutine section.
**PURPOSE:**

The RETURN statement (optionally) specifies a functions value and returns control from a function subroutine.

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90 UDF

**FORMAT:**

```
RETURN [exp]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value to be returned to caller.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- RETURN (no value)
- RETURN (10) (value is 10)
- RETURN (x + y) (value is x + y)

**REMARKS:**

When the RETURN statement executes, it terminates the function subroutine and returns control to the caller.

A function subroutine may contain more than one RETURN statement. If the last statement of a function is not a return then one is automatically generated by the compiler.

All RETURN statements in a function must be consistent in their use of return values. All must specify return values or none may (refer to FUNCTION subroutine).
Refer to ADVANCED PID, ANALOG EXCEPTION REPORT, COMMON SEQUENCE, CONTROL STATION, DATA BUFFER, DEVICE DRIVER, DIGITAL EXCEPTION REPORT, MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER, REMOTE CONTROL MEMORY, REMOTE MANUAL SET CONSTANT, REMOTE MOTOR CONTROL, and SMITH PREDICTOR.
SET AND WAIT

Refer to **DEVICE DRIVER**, **MULTI-STATE DEVICE DRIVER**, and **REMOTE MOTOR CONTROL**.
SIZEOF

function

**PURPOSE:** SIZEOF refers to the dimension size of an array. It returns the number of elements in the specified dimension of the array.

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90  UDF

**DECLARATION:** None required.

**REFERENCES:**

- Get total number of array elements
  - **SIZEOF** *(array_name)*
  - **Parameter** | **Description**
    | array_name | Name of an array of any type.

- Get number of elements of the nth dimension
  - **SIZEOF** *(array_name, n)*
  - **Parameter** | **Description**
    | array_name | Name of an array of any type.
    | n          | First, second, or third array dimension.

**Example:**

```plaintext
FUNCTION ARRAY_MANIPULATE
  VAR ARRAY SARRAY
  DECLARATION
    VAR I, J, K, X, Y, Z
  EXECUTABLE
    X = SIZEOF (SARRAY, 1)
    Y = SIZEOF (SARRAY, 2)
    Z = SIZEOF (SARRAY, 3)
    FOR I = 1 TO X DO
      FOR J = 1 TO Y DO
        FOR K = 0 TO Z DO
          ·
          ·
          ·
        END FOR K
      END FOR J
    END FOR I
ENDSUBR ARRAY_MANIPULATE
```

**REMARKS:** SIZEOF enables the programmer to write function subroutines that do array manipulations with arrays of variable dimensions.
**PURPOSE:** The SKIP CYCLE statement causes a program section (for example, CONTINUOUS, NORMAL LOGIC) to terminate execution until the next cycle.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:** SKIP CYCLE

Example: NORMAL LOGIC
SET FC501.MODE = MANUAL
SKIP CYCLE
SET FC501.CO = 0.0

**REMARKS:** When the SKIP CYCLE statement is executed, the section containing the statement terminates execution for the current cycle (that is, the remaining part of the section is skipped). When SKIP CYCLE is used in normal logic, it terminates the execution of the normal logic and returns to function block execution on the next cycle. Execution of normal logic returns to the executable statement after the SKIP CYCLE statement.

SKIP CYCLE should not be used in monitor subroutines.
SMITH PREDICTOR

function block

PURPOSE: The smith predictor function block (function code 160) provides a mechanism for the control of processes with dead time. The program interface to a smith predictor provides information about a process and its controller and allows changes to the tuning parameters.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90  UDF

DECLARATION: BLOCK name, BLK = const, FC = SMITH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: BLOCK S501, BLK = 240, FC = SMITH

REFERENCES: Smith predictor data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

Get process variable name.PV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.PV</td>
<td>Value of process variable (specification S1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = S501.PV

Get setpoint name.SP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.SP</td>
<td>Value of set point (specification S2).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: X = S501.SP
SMITH PREDICTOR

Get control output  name.CO

Parameter   Description
name         Name of the function block.
name.CO      Value of control output.

Example: X = S501.CO

Get track status  name.TRK

Parameter   Description
name         Name of the function block.
name.TRK     Tracking flag (specification S4):
              0 = tracking.
              1 = released.

Example: X = S501.TRK

Get gain parameter  name.GAIN

Parameter   Description
name         Name of the function block.
name.GAIN    Gain (specification S7).

Example: X = S501.GAIN

Get dead time parameter  name.DTIM

Parameter   Description
name         Name of the function block.
name.DTIM    Dead time (specification S8) in seconds.

Example: X = S501.DTIM

Get lag parameter  name.LAG

Parameter   Description
name         Name of the function block.
name.LAG     Lag time (specification S9) in seconds.

Example: X = S501.LAG
SMITH PREDICTOR (continued)

function block

Get tuning time constant parameter  

\[ \text{name.TUN} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.TUN</td>
<td>Tuning time constant (specification S10) in seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[ X = \text{S501.TUN} \]

Get high limit parameter  

\[ \text{name.HLIM} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.HLIM</td>
<td>High limit (specification S11).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[ X = \text{S501.HLIM} \]

Get low limit parameter  

\[ \text{name.LLIM} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.LLIM</td>
<td>Low limit (specification S12).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[ X = \text{S501.LLIM} \]

**COMMANDS:**

The following statements are used to tune smith predictor function blocks.

Set gain tuning parameter  

\[ \text{SET name.GAIN = exp} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Gain value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[ \text{SET S501.GAIN = 2.0} \]
SMITH PREDICTOR (continued)

function block

Set dead time parameter

```
SET  name.DTIM  =  exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Dead time parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET S501.DTIM = 30.0

Set lag parameter

```
SET  name.LAG  =  exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Lag value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET S501.LAG = 30.0

Set tuning time constant parameter

```
SET  name.TUN  =  exp
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Tuning parameter value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: SET S501.TUN = 30.0
START

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE, FUNCTION GENERATOR, INTEGRATOR, MONITOR, RAMP DATA, and TIMER.
A state subroutine is a major unit of an UDF program. It is responsible for controlling the sequence of activities within a UDF program. Figure 4-7 shows the general structure of a state subroutine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of this subroutine. The name must be unique within the UDF program. The maximum length is 16 alphanumeric characters. Embedded spaces are not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START</td>
<td>Specifies that this subroutine will be executed first when the UDF program is started. Only one state subroutine may be designated as the starting point of the UDF program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND WAIT</td>
<td>Designates that the normal logic of the state subroutine will not execute until start-up of the multi-function processor module is complete.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
STATE SUBR INITIAL_SUBR START
STATE SUBR FIRST_SUB START AND WAIT
STATE SUBR MOTOR_STOP
STATE SUBR (continued)

subroutine

**DECLARATIONS:**

The following specifies local data and calls to monitor subroutines for state subroutines:

\[
\text{type}_1 \ \text{name}_1 \\
\cdot \\
\cdot \\
\cdot \\
\text{type}_n \ \text{name}_n
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>typen</strong></td>
<td>Data type of the Nth parameter. Data type must be one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK ARRAY</td>
<td>Function block array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST</td>
<td>Constant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONST STRING</td>
<td>Constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONSTANT STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>Constant string array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGEN</td>
<td>Function generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRATOR</td>
<td>Integrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR</td>
<td>Monitor subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAMP</td>
<td>Ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER</td>
<td>Timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER ARRAY</td>
<td>Timer array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR ARRAY</td>
<td>Variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING</td>
<td>Variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY</td>
<td>Variable string array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

namen | Local name of the nth parameter. The Nth parameter corresponds to the nth item in the recipes list of formulation data. The name is restricted to a maximum of 32 characters.

Example:

```
DECLARATIONS
VAR COUNTER
CONST MIN_LIMIT = 3.0
TIMER TMR1 (MIN)
INTEGRATOR INTG1
FGEN PROFILE1 ((0.0, 80.0), (30.0, 100.0), (60.0, 80.0))
RAMP LEVEL RAMP (LIC501.SP, SEC)
MONITOR MON1 (FC211, FC215, FC534)
```
NOTE: STEP SUBR is an Elsag Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is PHASE SUBR. To use the Elsag Bailey specific term, refer to PHASE SUBR and replace PHASE with STEP.
**SUBPHASE**

variable

**NOTE:** SUBPHASE is an Elsig Bailey specific term. Usage of this term prohibits compiling to ISA-S88.01-1995 standards. The ISA-S88.01-1995 standard term is PHASE NUMBER. To use the Elsig Bailey specific term, refer to *PHASE NUMBER* and replace PHASE NUMBER with SUBPHASE.
SUBR DESCRIPTOR

function

PURPOSE: To retrieve the phase subroutine descriptor of the currently active operation from the current unit recipe executing in a BSEQ function block.

LANGUAGE: BATCH 90    UDF

DECLARATION: {from a Batch 90 program}
SUBR DESCRIPTOR (exp, vstring)

{from a UDF program}
SUBR DESCRIPTOR (bseqx, exp, vstring)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Phase number of the active operation within the unit recipe from which the descriptor is desired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstring</td>
<td>Name of the variable string (capable of storing at least 32 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bseqx</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: S_NUM = 0
REPEAT
    S_NUM = S_NUM + 1
    SUBR DESCRIPTOR (S_NUM, SUBRS(S_NUM))
UNTIL ((S_NUM >= LAST SUBR) OR (S_NUM > 31))
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**SUBR STATUS**

**function**

**PURPOSE:**
To retrieve the phase subroutine execution status from the current operation of the unit recipe executing in a BSEQ function block.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**

| from a Batch 90 program |

\[ var = \text{SUBR STATUS} \ (exp) \]

| from a UDF program |

\[ var = \text{SUBR STATUS} \ (bseqx, \ exp) \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( var )</td>
<td>Name of the variable used to return the execution status which can be: -1 = complete. 0 = outside range of the current operation. 1 = active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>Number of the phase subroutine from which the execution status is desired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( bseqx )</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

\[ S_{\text{NUM}} = 0 \]
\[ \text{FOR} \ I = 1 \ \text{TO} \ 32 \ \text{DO} \]
\[ \quad S_{\text{NUM}} = I \]
\[ \quad \text{STS_VAR} \ (S_{\text{NUM}}) = \text{SUBR STATUS} \ (\text{BATCH\_UNIT}, \ S_{\text{NUM}}) \]
\[ \quad \text{IF} \ (S_{\text{NUM}} \geq \text{LAST\_SUBR}) \ \text{BREAK} \]
\[ \text{END FOR} \]
**TEXT SELECTOR**

*function block*

**PURPOSE:**
This function block displays messages on operator consoles.

**LANGUAGE:**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>UDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DECLARATION:**
The text selector function block (function code 151) must be declared before it can be accessed from a subroutine. The declaration can appear only in the data section. Batch 90 and UDF programming languages will only manipulate text selector function blocks if specifications S1 and S2 have values of 5. Specification S3 must have a value of zero. These are the function blocks default values.

**BLOCK**

```
fbname, BLK = const, FC = TEXT [, WATCH]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fbname</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
<td>Function block address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATCH</td>
<td>Specifies that the text selector be placed on WATCH by the Batch Historian upon program start-up. If not specified, the text selector will be off watch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Batch 90 only |

**REFERENCE:**

**Get number**

```
name.MSG
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.MSG</td>
<td>Message number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
X = OPMG05.MSG
```

**Get color**

```
name.CLR
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name.CLR</td>
<td>Message color.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

```
X = OPMG05.CLR
```
function block

Get blink status  \texttt{name.BLNK}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{name}</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{name.BLNK}</td>
<td>Blink status: false (0) = not blinking. true (1) = blinking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \texttt{X = OMSG.BLNK}

\textbf{COMMANDS:}

\texttt{DISPLAY MESSAGE exp1 COLOR exp2 [BLINKING exp3] \ USING name}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{exp1}</td>
<td>A message number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{exp2}</td>
<td>Console color code: black (0) white (1) red (2) green (3) blue (4) cyan (5) magenta (6) yellow (7) orange (8) yellow-green (9) green-cyan (10) cyan-blue (11) blue-magenta (12) magenta-red (13) dark gray (14) light gray (15) purple (17) brown (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{exp3}</td>
<td>Blinking status: on = message will blink. off = message will not blink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{name}</td>
<td>Name of the text select function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \texttt{DISPLAY MESSAGE 2 COLOR GREEN BLINKING ON USING \ BIN_FILL_NO.}
Set number  

**SET**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Message number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  

SET OMSG05.MSG = X

Set color  

**SET**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Message color.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**  

SET OMSG05.CLR = X

Set blink status  

**SET**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Blink status:  

- off = 0 (not blinking).
- on = 1 (blinking). |

**Example:**  

SET OMSG05.BLNK = X

Set watch status  

**SET**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the function block.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| exp       | Batch Historian watch status:  

- 0 = off.  
- 1 = on. |

**Example:**  

SET OMSG05.WATCH = ON

**REMARKS:**  

These commands are buffered within the function block and do not have an immediate effect on the function block. The command will not take effect until the function block executes on its next cycle.
**TIMER**

data structure

**PURPOSE:** Timers are active data structures used to measure elapsed time. A timer may be declared either globally or locally.

**LANGUAGE:**

**DECLARATIONS:** The following is used to define a timer.

\[
\text{TIMER } \texttt{tname} \ (\texttt{units})
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{tname}</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{units}</td>
<td>Unit of time:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{SEC}</td>
<td>Seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{MIN}</td>
<td>Minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{HOUR}</td>
<td>Hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

\[
\text{TIMER \ T\text{IMER}1 \ (SEC)}
\]

\[
\text{TIMER \ CO\text{OK\_\text{T\_\text{IME}}} \ (\text{MIN})}
\]

If a timer is declared locally (that is, in a phase or state subroutine) then its value is initialized to zero at the start of the subroutine.

**REFERENCE:** Timer data may be read by using the appropriate name in an expression.

**Get value** \texttt{tname.\text{VAL}}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{tname}</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[
X = \text{TIMER1.\text{VAL}}
\]

**Get status** \texttt{tname.\text{STS}}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{tname}</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{tname.\text{STS}}</td>
<td>Status of timer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{0}</td>
<td>holding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{1}</td>
<td>running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \[
\text{IF \ (TIMER1.\text{STS} = \text{RUNNING}) \ THEN}
\]
Get alarm status  \( tname.\text{ALM} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( tname )</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \( tname.\text{ALM} \) | Alarm status:  
0 = false (no alarm).  
1 = true (alarm). |

Example: IF (TIMER1.\text{ALM}) THEN

Get alarm limit  \( tname.\text{LIM} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( tname )</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( tname.\text{LIM} )</td>
<td>Alarm limit. This value is -1 if the START command does not specify and alarm status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: IF (TIMER1.\text{LIM} > 60.0) THEN

**COMMANDS:**

The following statements are used to control timers.

**Start**  \( \text{START} \ tname \ [exp] \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( tname )</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( exp )</td>
<td>Alarm limit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: START TIMER1  
START TIMER1 30.0

This sets the alarm limit, updates the alarm status and sets the timer status to running. The timer value is not affected. If an alarm limit is not specified, the alarm status is not changed.

**Hold**  \( \text{HOLD} \ tname \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( tname )</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: HOLD TIMER1

This sets the status to holding (nothing else is effected).
**Timer** (continued)

Data structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reset</th>
<th><strong>RESET</strong> tname (exp)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tname</td>
<td>Name of the timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Initial time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: RESET TIMER1 (0)

This sets the time to exp, updates the alarm status and sets the status to holding. If no limit is specified, it is assumed to be zero.
#TITLE

directive

**PURPOSE:**
The #TITLE directive assigns a title to each page of the listing file. Typically this is done to make the listing easier to read.

**LANGUAGE:**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BATCH 90</td>
<td>UDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FORMAT:**

#TITLE "string"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>User defined title.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMARKS:**
The #TITLE directive will cause an immediate page eject unless #TITLE is the first line of a program. The string is limited to a single line (250 characters).
**UDF TYPE**

*function block*

**PURPOSE:** The UDF Type 1 or UDF Type 2 function block executing the UDF program must be declared. This allows the compiler to check that all declarations to UDF Type 1 and UDF Type 2 function block inputs, outputs, and specifications are correct.

**LANGUAGE:** BATCH 90 UDF

**DECLARATIONS:** The following is used to declare the UDF TYPE function block.

**UDF TYPE** $n$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$n$</td>
<td>1 for UDF Type 1 function blocks. 2 for UDF Type 2 function blocks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: UDF TYPE 1  
UDF TYPE 2
UNACQUIRE

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
UNCONNECT

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
PURPOSE: The is the first statement in the UNIT DATA section of a batch program. Unit data (like batch data) defines global data, function blocks, and symbols. Declarations made in unit data create generic references to specific declarations contained in unit definition files. Unit definition files are created, compiled, and downloaded separate from the batch program. For a given class of process equipment only one batch program source needs to be written.

The match between generic declarations in the UNIT DATA section of the batch program and the specific declarations with unit-specific values in the unit definition file is made by data type, name, and order. All components must match for the proper connection between declarations and references to be made.

LANGUAGE:

FORMAT: UNIT DATA
type1 name1
type2 name2
•
•
•
END DATA

Example: UNIT DATA
CONST STRING UNIT_NAME (16)
ANY UNIT_CAPACITY = (100<500<1000)
BLOCK INLET_VALVE, FC = DD
BLOCK DRAIN_VALVE, FC = DD
BLOCK TEMP_LOOP, FC = CS
BLOCK UNIT_MSG, FC = DATAEXPT
BLOCK FILTER_UNIT, FC = DD
END DATA

REMARKS: All of the function block types supported by batch data are also supported in unit data. The only difference between the declarations is that the unit data declaration does not include the function block address information. The function block
address information is supplied by the unit definition file. The batch language compiler generates a blank template from which the user can create the required number of unit definitions by simply filling in the blanks spaces. Refer to the following example.

Example:
```
#TITLE "UNIT DEFINITION FILE EXAMPLE TITLE"
#DESCRIPTOR "16-CH FILE DESC"
#LOCATION LOOP = 1, PCU = 20, MODULE = 7, BSEQ = 1250
UNIT DATA
  CONST STRING UNIT_NAME = "PROD TANK T402"
  ANY UNIT_CAPACITY = (750)
  BLOCK INLET_VALVE, BLK = 2005, FC = DD
  BLOCK DRAIN VALVE, BLK = 2015, FC = DD
  BLOCK TEMP_LOOP, BLK = 2025, FC = CS
  BLOCK UNIT_MSG, BLK = 2045, FC = DATAEXPT
  BLOCK FILTER_UNIT, BLK = 2450, FC = CSEQ, MODULE = 9
END DATA
```

For function block declaration details, refer to:

- AOL: Analog exception report
- APID: Advanced PID
- BBUF: Boolean data buffer
- CS: Control station
- CSEQ: Common sequence
- DATAEXPT: User defined data export
- DOL: Digital exception report
- DD: Device driver
- MSDD: Multi-state device driver
- RBUF: Real data buffer
- RCM: Remote control memory
- REMSET: Remote manual set constant
- RMC: Remote motor control
- SMITH: Smith block
- TEXT: Text

The block address data included on the #LOCATION line within the unit definition file is the one-time address specification for the BSEQ function block associated with the unit. This unit address data is used by other tools responsible for debugging, recipe creation, and file maintenance.
**UNIT DESCRIPTOR**

**function**

**PURPOSE:**
To retrieve the unit descriptor from the unit definition associated with the BSEQ function block. This command is only applicable when the batch program includes a UNIT DATA section.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**DECLARATION:**

(from a Batch 90 program)

UNIT DESCRIPTOR  \((vstring)\)

(from a UDF program)

UNIT DESCRIPTOR  \((bseqx, vstring)\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(vstring)</td>
<td>Name of the variable string (capable of storing at least 32 characters) used to return the specified descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bseqx)</td>
<td>Name of the BSEQ function block declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT PARAMETERS

PURPOSE: Unit parameters are used to declare a list of global recipe parameters that are valid for the entire program. This list provides a means for passing data from a recipe to all phase subroutines within the program. This section contains declarations that define the name and data type of each parameter. The parameter values are supplied by the recipe and are valid for the entire recipe execution.

LANGUAGE:

DECLARATION: UNIT PARAMETERS

| LANGUAGE: BATCH 90 | UDF |

Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pname</strong></td>
<td>Name of the parameter used by the program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>min</strong></td>
<td>Low limit value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>val</strong></td>
<td>Parameter value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>max</strong></td>
<td>High limit value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>constn</strong></td>
<td>Nth constant value of the selection list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>seqname</strong></td>
<td>Alias name that may be used by subroutines to reference or command a CSEQ function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>filename</strong></td>
<td>Name of the ASCII text file that contains CSEQ declarations written in the format as required by the CSEQ declarations in the BATCH DATA section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>str_arg</strong></td>
<td>Name of the string recipe parameter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### UNIT PARAMETERS (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cons</code></td>
<td>Maximum number of characters that the recipe may specify for the string parameter. The default value is 80 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cstrname</code></td>
<td>Name of the constant string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cstrN</code></td>
<td>Nth string constant value from the selection list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>text_string</code></td>
<td>Explicit constant string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:** Any subroutine within the program can refer to a parameter declared in the UNIT PARAMETERS section.

**REMARKS:** Only one UNIT PARAMETERS section is allowed within a program and it must appear before all phase subroutines.
UNRESERVE

Refer to COMMON SEQUENCE.
**VAR**

**PURPOSE:** To define a variable.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
| BATCH 90 | UDF |
```

**DECLARATION:** The following is used to define a variable.

```
VAR name [= cons]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons</td>
<td>Initial value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
```
VAR VOLUME
```

**REFERENCE:** The value of a variable is read by using its name in an expression.

```
name
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:  
```
X = VOLUME
```

**COMMANDS:** Refer to the **ASSIGNMENT** function.
VAR ARRAY

data structure

PURPOSE: A variable array is a group of variables organized in a table. An array may have 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole has a name. An individual variable (element) of an array is identified by an array index which specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension.

LANGUAGE:

DECLARATION:

Variable arrays The following statements are used to declare variable arrays:

{for one dimensional array}
VAR ARRAY name (low:high1)

{for two dimensional array}
VAR ARRAY name (low:high1, [low]:high2)

{for three dimensional array}
VAR ARRAY name (low:high1, [low]:high2, [low]:high3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>Lowest subscript value. Must be 0 or 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highN</td>
<td>Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. Must be a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16k.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: VAR ARRAY XA (0:9), XB (0:9), XC (1:20)
VAR ARRAY Y (1:5, 1:10), YY (1:5, 1:10)
VAR ARRAY Z (0:5, 0:6, 0:7)

REFERENCE:

Element of an array An individual element of an array is referenced as follows:

{for one dimensional array}
name (exp1)

{for two dimensional array}
name (exp1, exp2)

{for three dimensional array}
name (exp1, exp2, exp3)
Examples: A = XA (5)
A = Y (i, j)
A = Z (1, 2, i)
CALL MAX (Y (i, j), 105)

Entire array

In some operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array is referenced as follows:

name
- or -
name ("...")

The first form (just the name) is used when an array is passed as an argument to a function or monitor. The second form is used in other whole array operations (that is, array copy).

Examples: CALL MAX_ELEMENT (Y)
XA (*) = 1
XB (*) = XA
Z ("*;*;*") = 0

COMMANDS:
The following statements are used to operate on array elements and whole arrays.

Assign (write) a value to an array element

{for one dimensional array}
name (exp1) = exp

{for two dimensional array}
name (exp1, exp2) = exp

{for three dimensional array}
name (exp1, exp2, exp3) = exp
VAR ARRAY (continued)

data structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expN</td>
<td>Value of the Nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
- \( \text{XA (5)} = 10 \)
- \( \text{Y (i, j)} = 10 + \text{XA (i)} \)
- \( \text{Z (i, j, k)} = 1 \)

Initialize an array (set all elements to the same value)

\( \text{name (**...)} = \text{val} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(**...)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>val</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to elements of an array. Must be a single constant or variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
- \( \text{XA (*)} = 0 \)
- \( \text{Y (**, **)} = 10 \)
- \( \text{Z (**, *, **)} = 10 \)

Copy one array to another

\( \text{dname (**...)} = \text{sname (**...)} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dname</td>
<td>Name of the destination variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sname</td>
<td>Name of the source variable array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(**...)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
- \( \text{XA (*)} = \text{XB (*)} \)
- \( \text{Y (**, **)} = \text{YY (**, **)} \)

This statement assigns the value from each element of the source array to the corresponding element of the destination array. The source array is not affected. The source array and the destination array must be congruent (that is, the same
number of dimensions and same range for corresponding dimensions). If they are not congruent, an error occurs.

**NOTE:** Subscript range checking is done by the compiler if all of the subscripts of an array are constant. Range checking is always performed during program execution. Each time an array element is read, the subscript values are checked. If a subscript value is out-of-bounds, some error action is taken. If the error occurs during any mode other than FAULT mode (for example, NORMAL mode), the normal flow of control is aborted. The mode is changed to fault and control is transferred to fault logic. If the error occurs during FAULT mode, flow of control is not aborted.
**FUNCTION LIBRARY**

**VAR STRING**

*purpose:* Variable strings can be declared in the BATCH DATA section, UNIT PARAMETERS section, or any place in the phase, function, or monitor subroutines.

*language:* BATCH 90 UDF

*Declaration:* `VAR STRING vstrname [(cons)]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons</td>
<td>Maximum number of characters that may be written to the variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*References:*

- Get current string length: `vstrname.CLEN`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstrname.CLEN</td>
<td>Number of characters contained in the variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: SOME_VAR = PROMPT_MSG.CLEN
OTHER_VAR = REQUIRED_ACTION.CLEN

- Get maximum string length: `vstrname.MLEN`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vstrname.MLEN</td>
<td>Number of characters that may be contained within the variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: SOME_VAR = PROMPT_MSG.MLEN
OTHER_VAR = REQUIRED_ACTION.MLEN

*Remarks:* The value defined by the .MLEN reference corresponds to the value specified by the variable string declaration. This value matches the value returned by the .CLEN reference only when the variable string is full.
### VAR STRING

#### Get entire string value

- **Function**: `vstrname`

#### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vstrname</code></td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- `SOME_VAR_STRING = PROMPT_MSG`
- `OTHER_VAR_STRING = REQUIRED_ACTION`

#### Get value of a substring

- **Function**: `vstrname (FROM exp1 FOR exp2)`

#### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vstrname</code></td>
<td>Name of the variable string that contains the referenced substring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp1</code></td>
<td>First character or starting point of the substring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp2</code></td>
<td>Number of characters to be included in the substring. If not specified, the substring is terminated at the end of <code>vstrname</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- `SOME_VSTRING = PROMPT_MSG (FROM 32)`
- `OTHER_VSTRING = REQUIRED_ACTION (FROM 5 FOR 25)`

#### REMARKS:

Character positions begin with the left-most character as character number one. Subsequent characters are numbered according to their position relative to character number one. References that extend beyond the end of the constant string shall be terminated at the end of the variable string.

#### COMMANDS:

When the source string or substring of a write string value operation exceeds the capacity of the destination variable string, only the amount of the source string that will fit shall be shifted to the destination. If the starting point of a substring write operation lies beyond the last character of the initial string value, the operation is treated as an append operation.

#### Write to an entire string variable

- **Function**: `vstrname = strname[ (FROM exp1 FOR exp2)]`

- **or**

- **Function**: `vstrname = “string_exp”`

- **or**

- **Function**: `vstrname = strblk.ref_ext`
VAR STRING (continued)

data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strname</td>
<td>Name of any type of string, string constant, or string variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>Starting point within strname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp2</td>
<td>Number of characters from exp1 to be included in the substring. If no substring references are made, the entire contents of strname shall be written to vstrname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string_exp</td>
<td>Explicit constant string to be written to vstrname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of a DATAEXPT function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref_ext</td>
<td>Input or output string reference extension (.ISTR or .OSTR)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

REQUIRED_ACTION = "VERIFY PROCESS CONDITION"
PROMPT_MSG = REQUIRED_ACTION (FROM 1 FOR 8)
SOME_VSTRING = STATUS_IND.ISTR

Write to substring of string variable

vstrname (FROM exp1) = strname[ (FROM exp2 FOR exp3)]

- or -

vstrname (FROM exp1) = “string_exp”

- or -

vstrname (FROM exp1) = strblk.ref_ext

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vstrname</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp1</td>
<td>First character or starting point of the substring, within vstrname, that is to be written to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strname</td>
<td>Name of any string constant or string variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp2</td>
<td>Starting point within strname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp3</td>
<td>Number of characters from exp1 to be included in the substring. If not substring references are made, the entire contents of strname shall be written to vstrname.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string_exp</td>
<td>Explicit constant string to be inserted into vstrname beginning at the exp1 character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strblk</td>
<td>Name of an export string function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref_ext</td>
<td>Input or output string reference extension (.ISTR or .OSTR).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VAR STRING (continued)

Examples:

- REQUIRED_ACTION (FROM 32) = “CLEAN VESSELS”
- PROMPT_MSG (FROM 24) = UNIT_NAME (FROM 1 FOR 16)
- SOME_VSTRING (FROM 17) = DIALOGUE.OSTR

REMARKS:
Character positions begin with the left-most character as character number one. Subsequent characters are numbered according to their position relative to character number one.

**Fill an entire string with a character**

\[ vstrname \ (\ast) = “a” \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(vstrname)</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((\ast))</td>
<td>Denotes that the entire variable string is to be filled with the character specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>The single character that is to used to file the entire variable string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- PROMPT_MSG \((\ast)\) = “ ”
- REQUIRED_ACTION \((\ast)\) = “?”

**Append a string to the end of a variable string**

\[ vstrname \ (END) = strname \ [(FROM \ exp1 \ FOR \ exp2)] \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(vstrname)</td>
<td>Name of the variable string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{(END)})</td>
<td>Denotes that the string write operation will add the string to the end of the current string contained in (vstrname).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(strname)</td>
<td>Name of any type of string, string constant (symbolic or explicit), string variable, or string function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(exp1)</td>
<td>Starting point within (strname).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(exp2)</td>
<td>Number of characters from (exp1) to be included in the substring. If not substring references are made, the entire contents of (strname) shall be written to (vstrname).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- PROMPT_MSG (END) = “SAMPLE REQUIRED!”
- REQUIRED_ACTION (END) = UNIT_NAME (FROM 17 FOR 32)
VAR STRING ARRAY

data structure

**PURPOSE:** A variable string array is a group of variable strings organized in a table. An array may have 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. The array as a whole has a name. An individual variable string (element) of an array is identified by an array index which specifies the position of the element within the array. An array index consists of subscripts - one subscript for each dimension.

**LANGUAGE:**

BATCH 90   UDF

**DECLARATION:** Variable arrays The following statements are used to declare variable string arrays:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for one dimensional array</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY name ([length, low:high1]) [list]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for two dimensional array</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY name ([length, low:high1, low:high2]) [list]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three dimensional array</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY name ([length, low:high1, low:high2, low:high3]) [list]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length</td>
<td>Maximum string length for each array element. Allowable values range from 1 to 80 (default value).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>Lowest subscript value. Must be 0 or 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highN</td>
<td>Highest subscript value for the Nth dimension. Must be a constant. The total number of elements in an array must not exceed 16k.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>List of array element names. This one dimensional list has one entry for each element of the array. The order of the entries is determined by varying the first (leftmost) subscript the fastest, then the second and the third.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** For two and three dimensional arrays, the lowest subscript value for the second and third dimension must match the value that was specified by the first dimension.

**Examples:** VAR STRING ARRAY XA (20, 1:3) ("STRING1", "STRING2", "STRING3")
VAR STRING ARRAY Y (1:3, 1:2) ("STRING11", "STRING21", "STRING31", "STRING12", "STRING22", "STRING32")

VAR STRING ARRAY Z (60, 1:2, 1:2, 1:2) ("STRING111", "STRING211", "STRING121", "STRING221", "STRING112", "STRING212", "STRING122", "STRING222")

**REFERENCE:**

**Element of an array**  
An individual element of an array is referenced as follows:

{for one dimensional array}  
\[ name \ (exp1) \]

{for two dimensional array}  
\[ name \ (exp1, \ exp2) \]

{for three dimensional array}  
\[ name \ (exp1, \ exp2, \ exp3) \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expN</td>
<td>Value of the Nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an array error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
STRING = XA (5)  
STRING = Y (I, J)  
STRING = Z (1, 2, K)  
SUBSTRING = B (I, 3) (FROM 1 FOR 8)

**Entire array**  
In some operations it is necessary to refer to an entire array as a whole. An entire array is referenced as follows:

name  

- or -  

name ("...")

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(&quot;...&quot;)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions (that is, (&quot;&quot;), (&quot;&quot;), (&quot;&quot;), (&quot;&quot;), (&quot;&quot;)).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first form (just the name) is used when an array is passed as an argument to a function or monitor. The second form is used in other whole array operations (that is, array copy).
VAR STRING ARRAY (continued)

data structure

Examples:  
NEW_ARRAY (*) = OLD_ARRAY(*)
INIT_ARRAY (*,*) = 1

COMMANDS:  
The following statements are used to operate on array elements and whole arrays.

Assign (write) a value to an array element

| for one dimensional array |
| name (exp1) = exp |
| for two dimensional array |
| name (exp1, exp2) = exp |
| for three dimensional array |
| name (exp1, exp2, exp3) = exp |

Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expN</td>
<td>Value of the Nth subscript. If a subscript value exceeds its specified range, it causes an array error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
STRING1 (5) = “ELEMENT 3”
STRING2 = “ELEMENT_IJ”
STRING3 (1, 3, k) = “ELEMENT13K”

Initialize an array (set all elements to the same value)

name (*)(...) = STRING

Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name of the array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(...</td>
<td>Number of dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRING</td>
<td>Value to be assigned to elements of an array. Must be a single string constant or variable whose length is less than or equal to the specified maximum string length.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:  
STRING1 (*) = “INIT ON”
STRING2 (*, *) = “EMPTY”
STRING3 (*, *, *) = “NULL STRING”
VAR STRING ARRAY

COPY STRING ARRAY TO ANOTHER

dname (*...) = sname (*...)

Examples:

NEW_STRING (*) = OLD_STRING (*)
STRING2 (*, *) = DATA_ARRAY (*, *)

This statement assigns the value from each element of the source array to the corresponding element of the destination array. The source array is not affected. The source array and the destination array must be congruent (that is, the same number of dimensions and same range for corresponding dimensions). If they are not congruent, an array error occurs.

NOTE: Subscript range checking is done by the compiler if all of the subscripts of an array are constant. Range checking is always performed during program execution. Each time an array element is read, the subscript values are checked. If a subscript value is out-of-bounds, some error action is taken. If the error occurs during any mode other than FAULT mode (for example, NORMAL mode), the normal flow of control is aborted. The mode is changed to fault and control is transferred to fault logic. If the error occurs during FAULT mode, flow of control is not aborted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dname</td>
<td>Name of the destination array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sname</td>
<td>Name of the source array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(*)</td>
<td>Number of dimensions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**WAIT FOR**

*statement*

**PURPOSE:**
This statement delays sequential execution for the specified period of time.

**LANGUAGE:**
BATCH 90 | UDF

**FORMAT:**
WAIT FOR exp units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>Time interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>units</td>
<td>Units of time:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>Seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>Minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOUR</td>
<td>Hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**
WAIT FOR 4.5 MIN  (wait for 4.5 minutes)
WAIT FOR X SEC  (wait for X seconds)

**REMARKS:**
The program is suspended for one cycle each time the timer is checked. This statement can not be used where execution is continuous (for example, in a monitor subroutine).
WAIT UNTIL

statement

**PURPOSE:**
This statement causes a phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutine to wait until a specified condition is met.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

`WAIT UNTIL (exp)`

Examples:
- `WAIT UNTIL (LT102 >= 45.0) OR (TIMER1.VAL >= 30)`
- `WAIT UNTIL (TRUE) {one cycle delay}`

**REMARKS:**
If `exp` is false, `exp` is evaluated until it becomes true. If `exp` is true, execution resumes at the following statement.

The program is suspended for one cycle each time `exp` is evaluated (including the first time). The suspension occurs before evaluating `exp`. This statement can not be used where execution is continuous (for example, in a monitor subroutine).
**WAIT WHILE**

*statement*

**PURPOSE:** This statement causes a phase (Batch 90) or state (UDF) subroutine to wait as long as a specified condition is true.

**LANGUAGE:**

| BATCH 90 | UDF |

**FORMAT:**

\[
\text{WAIT \ WHILE} \ (\exp)
\]

Examples:

- `WAIT \ WHILE \ (LT102 \ >= \ 45.0) \ \text{OR (TIMER1.VAL} \ >= \ 30))`
- `WAIT \ WHILE \ (FALSE) \ \{\text{one cycle delay}\}`

**REMARKS:**

If \(\exp\) is true, \(\exp\) is evaluated until it becomes false. If \(\exp\) is false, execution resumes at the following statement.

The program is suspended for one cycle each time \(\exp\) is evaluated (including the first time). The suspension occurs before evaluating \(\exp\). This statement can not be used where execution is continuous (for example, in a monitor subroutine).
**PURPOSE:**
This statement continuously executes a block of statement while some condition is true.

**LANGUAGE:**

```
| BATCH 90 | UDF |
```

**FORMAT:**
```
WHILE (exp)
  statement1
  ...
  ...
  statementN
ENDWHILE
```

Example:
```
WHILE (FC101.PV < 50)
  SET FC101.CO = FC101.CO + 1
ENDWHILE
```

**REMARKS:**
If exp is false, execution transfers to statement following ENDWHILE. A while loop can be terminated by a BREAK statement.

The program is suspended for one cycle each time exp is evaluated (including the first time). The suspension occurs before evaluating exp. This statement can not be used where execution is continuous (for example, in a monitor subroutine).
There are many applications for the Batch 90 programming language. This section will detail a few applications in order to point out some important concepts. Some sample applications are:

- Parallel phase subroutines.
- Common sequences.

**Parallel Phase Subroutines**

In many batch applications it is advantageous to perform more than one activity simultaneously. Usually, it is not practical to embed logic for parallel activities within programs. This is particularly true when the parallel activities depend upon which unit procedure is being run. Therefore, it is necessary for the unit procedure to select phase subroutines for parallel execution within an operation. Batch 90 allows unit procedures to specify parallel phase subroutines. The major advantages of this capability are:

1. Each phase subroutine is self contained and does not need to include complex logic for monitoring parallel activities.

2. Phase subroutine logic is simplified. Unit procedures more readily depict the activities to be performed and the order in which they are to be executed (sequential or parallel).

Figure A-1 shows a typical example of a unit procedure that contains parallel phase subroutines. The manner in which parallel subroutines are assigned operation numbers is as follows:

```
xx.yy
```

where:

- **xx**: Operation number containing parallel phase subroutines.
- **yy**: Phase number of parallel phase subroutine within the operation (specify zero if there are no parallel phase subroutines).

In Figure A-1, operation two has two parallel phase subroutines. Operations three and four have three parallel phase subroutines. Operations zero, one, five, and six have one phase subroutine.
### BATCH 90 PROGRAM IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

The structure of a parallel phase subroutine is no different from other phase subroutines. The phase subroutine may include unit procedure parameters, local data, continuous logic, normal logic, fault logic, etc. The only additional requirement is that the compiler directive known as `#MAXPARALLEL` must be included within the Batch 90 program. This compiler directive determines the maximum number of parallel phase subroutines allowed by the unit procedure editor.

---

**Figure A-1. Example Parallel Phase Subroutine Unit Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPERATION</th>
<th>PHASE SUBR</th>
<th>LO VALUES</th>
<th>HI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>EMERGENCY_STOP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RINSE_HEADER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>CHARGE.REACTOR</td>
<td>DICKEY</td>
<td>D_WATER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>HEAT.REACTOR</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>CHARGE.REACTOR</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>125.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>CHARGE.REACTOR</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>250.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>RUN_AGITATOR</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>60.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>HEAT.REACTOR</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>150.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>DOSE.REACTOR</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>CHARGE.REACTOR</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>500.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>PRODUCT_SAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>XFER_PRODUCT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RECIPE ID:** 1  
**RECIPE DESCRIPTOR:** PARALLEL_TEST

- **OPERATION PHASE SUBR**
- **LO VALUES**
- **HI**

- **0**: EMERGENCY_STOP
- **1**: RINSE_HEADER
- **2.1**: CHARGE.REACTOR
- **2.2**: HEAT.REACTOR
- **3.1**: CHARGE.REACTOR
- **3.2**: CHARGE.REACTOR
- **3.3**: RUN_AGITATOR
- **4.1**: HEAT.REACTOR
- **4.2**: DOSE.REACTOR
- **4.3**: CHARGE.REACTOR
- **5**: PRODUCT_SAMPLE
- **6**: XFER_PRODUCT

*Figure A-1. Example Parallel Phase Subroutine Unit Procedure*
#MAXPARALLEL = n

where:

\[ n \text{ Value between two and 32.} \]

The compiler uses the #MAXPARALLEL directive to calculate the required data space for the program (specification S12 of the BSEQ function block).

\[ S12 = \text{[largest_phase_subroutine} \times \text{#MAXPARALLEL]} + \text{batch data} \]

The built in status variables OPERATION and PHASE NUMBER enable the programmer to include logic that determines the phase subroutine’s location within the unit procedure (that is, if the phase subroutine is part of an operation that includes parallel phase subroutines). Within the example unit procedure (refer to Figure A-1) the parallel phase subroutine CHARGE_REACTOR is assigned to four locations (refer to Table A-1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Number</th>
<th>Phase Subroutine</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>CHARGE_REACTOR</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>CHARGE_REACTOR</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>CHARGE_REACTOR</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>CHARGE_REACTOR</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LOGIC EXECUTION CONTROL FLOW**

It is important to understand the manner in which parallel phase subroutines are executed. Within the boundaries of an operation that contains parallel phase subroutines, the phase subroutines are executed sequentially by phase number. Figure A-2 shows the program logic flow for operation three of the example unit procedure.

Data structures include items such as timers, integrators, ramps, and function generators. All phase subroutines within an operation will be in the same sequential logic mode (that is, all executing normal logic or all executing fault logic, etc.). Thus, when any phase subroutine executes a fault command, all phase subroutines transfer from normal to fault logic. Similarly, if any phase subroutine executes a restart command, all phase subroutines will transfer to restart logic. If the operator puts the sequence into hold, all phase subroutines go to hold logic.
An operation with parallel phase subroutines is complete only if all phase subroutines have completed (finished normal logic) or one of the phase subroutine executes a NEXT OPERATION statement. The NEXT OPERATION statement will terminate all parallel phase subroutines and change the operation number to the value specified by the command.

If the parallel phase subroutines are executing restart logic, program execution is not returned to normal logic until all phase subroutines have completed restart logic.

Common Sequences

In many applications, certain batch units may serve as common resources to other batch units. For example, a series of reactors might share common feed tanks, headers, or cooling systems. Each of the shared resources have batch sequences associated with them. Because control of these sequences is required by more than one batch unit, they are referred to as common sequences (Common Sequence Function Block, function code 219).

COMMON SEQUENCE FUNCTION BLOCK DIAGRAM

Figure A-3 shows an example Common Sequence Function Block (CSEQ) configuration. The Batch Historian Function Block (BHIST) is optional, and is not required for common sequence operation.

The Batch Sequence Function Block (BSEQ) executes the batch program. The CSEQ function block provides an interface by which the batch sequence is shared or controlled by other batch programs.
Figure A-3. Example Common Sequence Function Block Configuration

Common sequence affects control of some inputs to the BSEQ and BHIST function blocks. The control mode of the CSEQ function block determines what effect it has on the BSEQ and BHIST function block inputs.

Operator Mode

In the operator mode, BSEQ and BHIST function block inputs are enabled and operate according to their normal function.

Remote Mode

In the remote mode, BSEQ function block inputs (that is, run/hold, unit procedure, and operation) are disabled. The BSEQ function block responds to remote commands received through the CSEQ function block or these input functions. The BHIST inputs (that is, campaign, batch and lot number) are disabled. The BHIST function block receives the input parameters from the CSEQ function block.

COMMON SEQUENCE COMMUNICATION

The CSEQ function block serves as an interface between the common sequence and other batch or common sequences. The CSEQ function block receives commands from other programs and sends status information to these programs.
Before a program can communicate with a CSEQ function block, it must establish a connection with the CSEQ function block. The CSEQ block can only support a limited number of program connections. The limit of program connections is configurable, not tunable and set through specification S13 of the CSEQ function block.

Once a client program connects to a server CSEQ function block, the client program will receive status information from the server program. The server program sends status information via its CSEQ function block to all connected client programs on the following basis:

1. Upon initial connection, the CSEQ function block sends the client program all of the following data:
   - Connection status.
   - Reservation status.
   - Ownership status.
   - Control mode (operator or remote).
   - Program status (inactive, running or holding).
   - Unit procedure number.
   - Operation number.
   - Fault code.
   - Campaign, batch and lot numbers.
   - Eight status variables (set by the server program).

2. After the server CSEQ function block sends the initial status information, it sends only changing status information to the connected client programs. A CSEQ function block message will not be sent more often then the time period determined by specification S11 (update minimum time) of the CSEQ function block.

3. If status information does not change, the CSEQ function block periodically sends a message to confirm that the communication to client programs still exists. Specification S12 of the CSEQ function block determines how often this message is sent.

**ACQUIRING CONTROL OF A CSEQ FUNCTION BLOCK**

Establishing a connection with a CSEQ function block allows the client program to communicate with the server program. In some cases, this is all that is required by the application. For example, the client program connects to a server program to determine the status of the batch unit being controlled by the common sequence.

In many applications the client programs will need to gain control of the common sequence and manipulate it. For example, the reactor client program may need to send material transfer requests (quantities, flow rates, etc.) to a common feed tank.
(the server). In another example, the client may need to initiate the execution of a particular unit procedure by the server. In this instance, the client program must acquire ownership of the server.

The CSEQ function block may only have one owner at a time. Therefore, the CSEQ function block has an ownership queue. ACQUIRE commands issued by client programs have a priority associated with each request (refer to Section 4 for information on all CSEQ commands). The ownership queue stores ACQUIRE commands received from clients by priority. Queued ACQUIRE commands that meet the reservation criteria, are granted in their order of priority.

Client programs may reserve a CSEQ function block for later use. The reserve command enables client programs to specify which values for campaign, batch and lot numbers must match for an ACQUIRE command to be qualified. The CSEQ function block may only have one active reservation at a time.

Reservation, ownership and ownership queuing combine to provide the means for the first level of batch unit management. The CSEQ application is a focal point for applications that involve production scheduling or variable production paths.

TYPICAL APPLICATION

The process shown in Figure A-4 represents the simplest use of the CSEQ function block. The process has a main reactor that acquires control of a feed tank.

```
Figure A-4. Example Usage of Common Sequence
```

In order for the reactor to control the batch programs associated with the feed tanks, the CSEQ function block for the feed tanks must be declared within the batch data section of the reactor program (refer to Section 4 for CSEQ declaration spe-
cifics). Figure A-5 shows typical logic used within a phase subroutine of the reactor program.

```plaintext
BATCH DATA
  BLOCK FEEDTANK, BLK = 700, FC = CSEQ, /"BLOCK 700 IS THE ADDRESS OF THE BSEQ \n  FOR THE FEEDTANK/"
END DATA

PHASE_SUBR FEED_FROM_TNK1
  ANY QUANTITY
CONTINUOUS
  IF (FEEDTANK.CSTS = CONNECTED) THEN
    IF (FEEDTANK.XSTS = IN_FAULT) FAULT 1
  ENDIF
  IF (FEEDTANK.CSTS = FAILED) FAULT 2
NORMAL_LOGIC
  CONNECT FEEDTANK
  WAIT UNTIL (FEEDTANK.CSTS = CONNECTED)
  ACQUIRE FEEDTANK CAMPAIGN = MINE, BATCH = MINE, LOT = MINE
  WAIT UNTIL (FEEDTANK.OSTS = OWNED_BY_ME)
  HOLD FEEDTANK
  WAIT UNTIL ((FEEDTANK.XSTS = HOLDING) OR (FEEDTANK.XSTS = COMPLETED))
  START FEEDTANK RECIPE = 21, OPERATION = 1
  WAIT UNTIL (FEEDTANK.XSTS = RUNNING)
  SET FEED_TANK.CV1 = EXP1
  SET FEED_TANK.CV2 = EXP2
  WAIT WHILE (FEEDTANK.CPEND >= WAITING
    
    
  WAIT UNTIL (FEEDTANK.XSTS = COMPLETED)
  UNCONNECT FEEDTANK
ENDSUBR
```

**Figure A-5. Example Phase Subroutine Using CSEQ Commands**

In Figure A-5, the logic issues a CSEQ command and then waits for confirmation that the desired action has occurred. This ensures proper operation of the CSEQ function block. There is a time delay between the issuing of CSEQ commands and the response from the CSEQ function block. The typical pattern of events used in common sequence applications is:

1. **CONNECT AND CONFIRM** `cseq.CSTS`
2. **ACQUIRE AND CONFIRM** `cseq.OSTS`
3. Manipulate required CSEQ attribute and confirm:

START AND CONFIRM \textit{cseq.XSTS}

- or -

HOLD AND CONFIRM \textit{cseq.XSTS}

- or -

\textbf{SET} \textit{cseq.CV(x)} AND CONFIRM \textit{cseq.SV(y)}

4. \textbf{UNACQUIRE AND CONFIRM} \textit{cseq.OSTS}

5. \textbf{UNCONNECT AND CONFIRM} \textit{cseq.CSTS}

The continuous section checks the validity of the CSEQ connection and the actual fault status of the common sequence. This type of logic implemented in a continuous logic section is typical for most common sequence applications.

\textbf{USER DEFINED FUNCTION (UDF)}

The following example program demonstrates how to use the UDF programming language to control the operation of a parallel grouping of filters. Filter condition is monitored by measuring the differential pressure across the group of filters. Figure A-6 shows a graphical representation of the process and associated equipment.

When a run input signal is sent to the program, the start-up sequence is executed. During the start-up sequence, filter one is backwashed for tunable amount of time (BWASH\textunderscore DURATION) and put into operation. After a tunable amount of time (BWASH\textunderscore INTERVAL) filter two is put through the same procedure. Filter three is put through the procedure last. At this point all filters are functioning properly and the program is monitoring differential pressure across the filters. As the filters start to fill with material, the differential pressure rises. When the differential pressure exceeds the tunable set point (TRIGGER\textunderscore PRESSURE), the program executes the cleaning procedure on filter one. The cleaning procedure consists of opening the inlet valve to the drain piping, closing the outlet valve, and letting the process fluid flow into the filter and out the drain pipes taking filtered material with it. After a tunable amount of time (BWASH\textunderscore DURATION), the outlet valve is opened and the inlet valve is set to allow for normal flow through the filter. The filter is put into operation, and a timer value (BWASH\textunderscore INTERVAL) is set. The program continues to monitor differential pressure. If the differential pressure is still higher than the set point when the timer value reaches zero, the next filter is cleaned. This sequence continues until the differential pressure drops below the set point. When the
differential pressure once again exceeds the set point, the next
filter is cleaned and the sequence continues until the differen-
tial pressure drops below the set point. When a stop input sig-
nal is sent to the program, the shut down procedure is
executed. The shut down procedure consists of closing the
inlet valve and then the output valve of filter one and then filter
two and finally filter three.

Figure A-7 shows the UDF program used to control the filters. Figure A-8 shows the function block configuration for the program.
# DEBUG LEVEL = 4
# DESCRIPTOR "UDF EXAMPLE"
# TITLE "UDF CONTROL PROGRAM FOR MULTI-SECTION FILTER"

DATA
UDF TYPE 2
{UDF BLOCK INPUT DECLARATIONS}
  INPUT 1 FLTR1_INLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 2 FLTR1_OUTLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 3 FLTR2_INLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 4 FLTR2_OUTLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 5 FLTR3_INLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 6 FLTR3_OUTLET, FC = MSDD
  INPUT 16 OPERATOR_MSG, FC = DATAEXPT
  INPUT 17 DIFF_PRESSURE, FC = AOL
  INPUT 18 RUN_STOP_PB, FC = RCM
{UDF BLOCK OUTPUT DECLARATIONS}
  OUTPUT 0 FLTR1_BWASH_IND
  OUTPUT 1 FLTR2_BWASH_IND
  OUTPUT 2 FLTR3_BWASH_IND
  OUTPUT 4 FLTR1_SERVICE_IND
  OUTPUT 5 FLTR2_SERVICE_IND
  OUTPUT 6 FLTR3_SERVICE_IND
  OUTPUT 8 BWASH_TIME_REMAINING
  OUTPUT 9 TIME_TO_NEXT_BWASH
{UDF BLOCK TUNABLE PARAMETER SPECIFICATIONS}
  SPEC 19 BWASH_DURATION
  SPEC 20 BWASH_INTERVAL
  SPEC 21 SYSTEM_STARTUP_DURATION
  SPEC 22 TRIGGER_PRESSURE
{UDF PROGRAM GLOBAL DATA DECLARATIONS}
  VAR SYSTEM_STATUS, FLTR1_STS, FLTR2_STS, FLTR3_STS
  CONST TO_FLTR = 3, TO_DRAIN = 2, NUMBER_OF_FLTRS = 3
  CONST FILTERING = 3, BACKWASH = 2, SHUTDOWN = 1
  TIMER BWASH_TIMER (MIN), FLTR_INTERVAL (MIN)
END DATA

MONITOR DEV_STATUS_MON
CONTINUOUS
  IF ((FLTR1_INLET.STS = BAD) OR (FLTR1_OUTLET.STS = BAD)) THEN
    FLTR1_STS = BAD
  ELSE
    FLTR1_STS = GOOD
  ENDIF
  IF ((FLTR2_INLET.STS = BAD) OR (FLTR2_OUTLET.STS = BAD)) THEN
    FLTR2_STS = BAD
  ELSE
    FLTR2_STS = GOOD
  ENDIF
  IF ((FLTR3_INLET.STS = BAD) OR (FLTR3_OUTLET.STS = BAD)) THEN
    FLTR3_STS = BAD
  ELSE
    FLTR3_STS = GOOD
  ENDIF
  IF ((FLTR1_STS = BAD) OR (FLTR2_STS = BAD) OR (FLTR3_STS = BAD)) THEN
    SYSTEM_STATUS = BAD
  ELSE
    SYSTEM_STATUS = GOOD
  ENDIF

Figure A-7. Example UDF Program (Page 1 of 4)
FUNCTION MOVE_VALVE
MSDD VALVE
   ANY COMMAND_POSITION
EXECUTABLE
   IF (VALVE.MODE <> AUTO) SET VALVE.MODE = AUTO
   SET VALVE.CO = COMMAND_POSITION
   WAIT WHILE (VALVE.STS = WAITING)
   IF (VALVE.STS = BAD) THEN
      SET VALVE.MODE = MANUAL
      SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "VALVE FAILURE IN FILTER SYSTEM"
      FAULT 1
   ELSE
      RETURN
   ENDIF
END SUBR MOVE_VALVE

FUNCTION FLTR_ACTION
MSDD INLET
MSDD OUTLET
OUTPUT BWASH_IND
OUTPUT SERVICE_IND
ANY FILTER_OP
ANY DURATION
EXECUTABLE
   RESET BWASH_TIMER 0
   START BWASH_TIMER (DURATION)
   DO CASE FILTER_OP
      CASE SHUTDOWN
         SET SERVICE_IND.VAL = OFF
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (INLET, CLOSED)
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (OUTLET, CLOSED)
         SET BWASH_IND.VAL = OFF
      CASE BACKWASH
         SET SERVICE_IND.VAL = OFF
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (INLET, TO_DRAIN)
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (OUTLET, CLOSED)
         SET BWASH_IND.VAL = ON
      CASE FILTERING
         SET BWASH_IND.VAL = OFF
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (OUTLET, OPEN)
         CALL MOVE_VALVE (INLET, TO_FLTR)
         SET SERVICE_IND.VAL = ON
      END CASE
   END CASE
   WAIT UNTIL (BWASH_TIMER.ALM)
   RESET BWASH_TIMER 0
END SUBR FLTR_ACTION

STATE SUBR STARTUP_SYSTEM START AND WAIT
DECLARATIONS
VAR STARTUP_INTERVAL
CONTINUOUS
   SET BWASH_TIME_REMAINING.VAL = BWASH_TIMER.LIM - BWASH_TIMER.VAL
   SET TIME_TO_NEXT_BWASH.VAL = BWASH_TIME_REMAINING.VAL

Figure A-7. Example UDF Program (Page 2 of 4)
NORMAL LOGIC
  IF (RUN_STOP_PB.VAL <> RUNNING) SET RUN_STOP_PB.VAL = RUNNING
  SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER SYSTEM START-UP INITIATED"
  STARTUP_INTERVAL = SYSTEM_STARTUP_DURATION.VAL / NUMBER_OF_FLTRS

  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR1_INLET, FLTR1_OUTLET, FLTR1_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR1_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, STARTUP_INTERVAL)
  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR1_INLET, FLTR1_OUTLET, FLTR1_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR1_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
  SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #1 START-UP COMPLETE"

  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR2_INLET, FLTR2_OUTLET, FLTR2_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR2_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, STARTUP_INTERVAL)
  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR2_INLET, FLTR2_OUTLET, FLTR2_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR2_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
  SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #2 START-UP COMPLETE"

  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR3_INLET, FLTR3_OUTLET, FLTR3_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR3_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, STARTUP_INTERVAL)
  CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR3_INLET, FLTR3_OUTLET, FLTR3_BWASH_IND, \
                   FLTR3_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
  SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #3 START-UP COMPLETE"

  NEXT STATE SYSTEM_OPERATION

FAULT LOGIC
  WAIT UNTIL (SYSTEM_STATUS = GOOD)
  NEXT STATE SYSTEM_SHUTDOWN
ENDSUBR STARTUP_SYSTEM

STATE SUBR SYSTEM_OPERATION
  DECLARATIONS
  VAR NEXT_FILTER
  CONST FILTER1 = 1, FILTER2 = 2, FILTER3 = 3
  CONTINUOUS

  SET BWASH_TIME_REMAINING.VAL = BWASH_TIMER.LIM - BWASH_TIMER.VAL
  SET TIME_TO_NEXT_BWASH.VAL = BWASH_INTERVAL.VAL - FLTR_INTERVAL.VAL

NORMAL LOGIC

  NEXT_FILTER = FILTER1
  WHILE (RUN_STOP_PB.VAL = RUNNING)
    WAIT UNTIL (DIFF_PRESSURE.VAL >= TRIGGER_PRESSURE.VAL)
    RESET FLTR_INTERVAL 0
    START FLTR_INTERVAL (BWASH_INTERVAL.VAL)
    DO CASE NEXT_FILTER
      CASE FILTER1
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR1_INLET, FLTR1_OUTLET, FLTR1_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR1_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, BWASH_DURATION.VAL)
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR1_INLET, FLTR1_OUTLET, FLTR1_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR1_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
        NEXT_FILTER = 2
      CASE FILTER2
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR2_INLET, FLTR2_OUTLET, FLTR2_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR2_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, BWASH_DURATION.VAL)
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR2_INLET, FLTR2_OUTLET, FLTR2_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR2_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
        NEXT_FILTER = 3
      CASE FILTER3
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR3_INLET, FLTR3_OUTLET, FLTR3_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR3_SERVICE_IND, BACKWASH, BWASH_DURATION.VAL)
        CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR3_INLET, FLTR3_OUTLET, FLTR3_BWASH_IND, \ 
                          FLTR3_SERVICE_IND, FILTERING, RUNNING)
        NEXT_FILTER = 1
    END_CASE
  END_WHERE

Figure A-7. Example UDF Program (Page 3 of 4)
END CASE
WAIT UNTIL (FLTR_INTERVAL.ALM = TRUE)
ENDWHILE
NEXT STATE SYSTEM_SHUTDOWN
FAULT LOGIC
WAIT UNTIL (SYSTEM_STATUS = GOOD)
NEXT STATE SYSTEM_SHUTDOWN
ENDSUBR SYSTEM_OPERATION

STATE SUBR SYSTEM_SHUTDOWN
DECLARATIONS
VAR SHUTDOWN_INTERVAL
CONTINUOUS
SET BWASH_TIME_REMAINING.VAL = 999
SET TIME_TO_NEXT_BWASH.VAL = 999
NORMAL LOGIC
SHUTDOWN_INTERVAL = SYSTEM_STARTUP_DURATION.VAL / NUMBER_OF_FLTRS
SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #1 SHUTDOWN INITIATED"
CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR1_INLET, FLTR1_OUTLET, FLTR1_BWASH_IND, FLTR1_SERVICE_IND, SHUTDOWN, SHUTDOWN_INTERVAL)
SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #2 START-UP INITIATED"
CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR2_INLET, FLTR2_OUTLET, FLTR2_BWASH_IND, FLTR2_SERVICE_IND, SHUTDOWN, SHUTDOWN_INTERVAL)
SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER #3 START-UP COMPLETE"
CALL FLTR_ACTION (FLTR3_INLET, FLTR3_OUTLET, FLTR3_BWASH_IND, FLTR3_SERVICE_IND, SHUTDOWN, SHUTDOWN_INTERVAL)
SET OPERATOR_MSG.OSTR = "FILTER SYSTEM SHUTDOWN COMPLETED"
WAIT UNTIL (RUN_STOP_PB.VAL = RUNNING)
NEXT STATE STARTUP_SYSTEM
ENDSUBR SYSTEM_SHUTDOWN

Figure A-7. Example UDF Program (Page 4 of 4)
Figure A-8. Example UDF Function Block Configuration
**BATCH SEQUENCE STATES**

**Batch_complete:**
Previous batch sequence completed.
All sequential and continuous activity halted.
Program_ID (S9) may be changed.
Object file may be changed.
Recipe_ID input (S1) may be changed.
Unit recipe file may be modified or deleted.
Operation number input (S2) may be changed.

**Normal_logic:**
For each function block execution cycle:
Execute global monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
For each parallel phase subroutine:

---

Figure B-1. Example State Transition Diagram
Execute local monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
Execute continuous section.
Execute first/next segment of normal logic.

**Hold_logic:**
For each function block execution cycle:
Execute global monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
For each parallel phase subroutine:
Execute local monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
Execute continuous section.
Execute first/next segment of hold logic.

**Fault_logic:**
For each function block execution cycle:
Execute global monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
For each parallel phase subroutine:
Execute local monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
Execute continuous section.
Execute first/next segment of fault logic.

**Holding:**
For each function block execution cycle:
Execute global monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
Program_ID (S9) may be changed.
Object file may be modified (changes are restricted).
Recipe_ID input (S1) may be changed.
Unit recipe file may be modified.
Operation number input (S2) may be changed.

**Restart_logic:**
For each function block execution cycle:
Execute global monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
For each parallel phase subroutine:
Execute local monitor subroutines and active data structures (that is, timers, integrators).
Execute continuous section.
Execute first/next segment of restart logic.

**Emer_stop:**
This is a state that contains all regular states (normal, fault, hold, restart). These states and transitions behave normally except for:
The operation number is 0.
The run input is ignored except in the handling state (that is, the program runs whether the input is 1 or 0).
The following conditions must exist before control can be transferred to a normal operation.
The executed_stop input must be 0.
The run input must be 0 to 1 transition.
Any attempt to transfer to a new operation (end of normal logic, new operation, etc.) without meeting these conditions will cause a transfer to hold_logic (in operation 0).

**Batch complete:**
(1) Run input (0 or 1) or CSEQ start command.
If executed_stop input is 1:
    set fault code (-13)
    goto----------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
If operation number input less than 1:
    set fault code (-15)
    goto----------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
Read program object file.
If error:
    set fault code (-4, -5, -6, -7, -9 or -18)
    goto------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
Check function block references.
If error:
    set fault code (-16)
    goto------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
Lock unit recipe file and check for compatibility with Batch program.
If error:
    set fault code (-8, -9, -10, -12, -19, -20, -25)
    goto------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
If waiting for historian:
    set fault code (-23)
    when historian is ready goto (start operation)---> (2)
Goto (start operation)---------------------------------------> (2)

**Start operation (transition):**
(2) If end of unit recipe (operation not in unit procedure):
    goto----------------------------------------------> Batch_complete
Read unit recipe data for this operation.
If error:
    set fault code (-10)
    goto----------------------------------------------> Holding
Initialize local data (variables, timers, etc.) for all parallel phase subroutines.
Set up for first statement of normal logic.
Goto----------------------------------------------> Normal_logic

**Normal logic:**
(3.1) End of normal logic -or- NEXT OPERATION statement.
Increment operation number.
Goto (start new operation).--------------------------------------> (2)
(3.2) New operation statement.
State Transition Diagram

Batch Sequence Transitions

Set operation number to specified value.
Goto (start new operation)--------------------------> (2)

Normal_logic:
(4) Done statement.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto----------------------------------------> Batch_complete

Normal_logic:
(5) (Run input (0) -or- CSEQ hold command) -and- hold enabled.
Set fault code (-1).
If hold logic is defined:
   set up for first statement of hold logic
   goto----------------------------------------> Hold_logic
else
   unlock unit recipe file
   goto----------------------------------------> Holding

Normal_logic:
(6) Fault statement.
If fault logic is defined:
   set up for first statement of fault logic
   goto----------------------------------------> Fault_logic
else
   unlock unit recipe file
   goto----------------------------------------> Holding

Hold_logic:
(7) End of hold logic.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto----------------------------------------> Holding

Hold_logic:
(8) Fault statement.
If fault logic is defined:
   set up for first statement of fault logic
   goto----------------------------------------> Fault_logic
else
   unlock unit recipe file
   goto----------------------------------------> Holding

Hold_logic:
(9.1) NEXT OPERATION statement.
Increment operation number.
Goto (start new operation)--------------------------> (2)
(9.2) New operation statement.
Set operation number to specified value.
Goto (start new operation)--------------------------> (2)

Hold_logic:
(10) Done statement.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto----------------------------------------> Batch_complete
**Fault Logic:**
(11) End of fault Logic.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto------------------------------------------> Holding

**Fault Logic:**
(12) Restart statement.
Set up for first statement of Restart logic.
Disable fault statement.
Goto----------------------------------> Restart_logic

**Fault Logic:**
(13.1) NEXT OPERATION statement.
Increment operation number.
Goto (start new operation)------------------> (2)
(13.2) New operation statement.
Set operation number to specified value.
Goto (start new operation)------------------> (2)

**Fault Logic:**
(14) Done statement.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto----------------------------------> Batch_complete

**Holding:**
(15) Run input (0-1) or CSEQ start command.
Read program object file.
If error:
  set fault code (-4, -5, -6, -7, -9 or -18)
goto----------------------------------> Holding
If Batch data has changed:
  set fault code (-21)
goto----------------------------------> Batch_complete
Check function block declarations in Batch data.
If error:
  set fault code (-16)
goto----------------------------------> Holding
If recipe_ID input has changed:
  goto (cold restart)------------------> (2)
Lock unit recipe file and check for compatibility with Batch program.
If error:
  set fault code (-8, -9, -10, -12, -19, -20, -25)
goto----------------------------------> Holding
If operation number input has changed,
goto (cold restart)------------------> (2)
Read unit recipe information for this operation.
If phase subroutine name has changed:
  goto (cold restart)------------------> (2)
If active phase subroutine data declarations have changed:
  set fault code (-21)
goto----------------------------------> Holding
If restart logic is defined:
  disable fault statement
set up for first statement of restart logic
  goto-------------------------------------------------> Restart_logic
else
  set up for first statement of normal logic
  goto-------------------------------------------------> Normal_logic

**Restart.Logic:**
(16) Resume statement.
Enable fault statement.
Set up for specified restart point.
Goto-------------------------------------------------> Normal_logic

**Restart_logic:**
(17) (Run input (0) -or- CSEQ hold command) -and- hold enabled
Enable fault statement.
Set fault code (-1).
If hold logic is defined:
  set up for first statement of hold logic
  goto--------------------------------------------------> Hold_logic
else
  unlock unit procedure file
  goto--------------------------------------------------------> Holding

**Restart_logic:**
(18.1) NEXT OPERATION statement.
Enable fault statement.
Increment operation number.
Goto (start new operation)-------------------------> (2)
(18.2) New operation statement.
Enable fault statement.
Set operation number to specified value.
Goto (start new operation)-------------------------> (2)

**Restart_logic:**
(19) Done statement.
Unlock unit recipe file.
Goto--------------------------------------------------> Batch_complete

**Any state (except Batch_complete):**
(20) Executed_stop input (1).
Set operation = 0.
Read unit recipe data for this operation.
If error
  set fault code (-10)
  goto--------------------------------------------------> Holding
Initialize local data (variables, timers, etc.) (operation 0)
Set up for first statement of normal logic.
Goto--------------------------------------------------> Normal_logic
-----------------------------------------------------------> (operation 0)
(6) If fault.
If fault logic defined.
  set up for statement of fault logic
  goto--------------------------------------------------> Fault_logic
else
    goto--------------------------------------> Holding

(4) Done statement or last line of normal logic.
   Unlock unit recipe file.
   Set fault code (-13).
   goto--------------------------------------> Batch_complete
## Index

### A
- Abbreviations .................................................. 1-3
- ACK variable .................................................. 4-15
- ACQUIRE ....................................................... 4-16
- Advanced PID function block ............................... 4-17
- Analog exception report function block .................. 4-23
- Arithmetic expressions ....................................... 4-13
- Arithmetic operators .......................................... 4-13
- ARRAY .......................................................... 4-27
- Arrays
  - Array to array comparison ................................ 4-11
  - Min/Max values ............................................. 4-11
  - Variable to array comparison ......................... 4-10
- Assignment statement ........................................ 4-28

### B
- Batch 90
  - Batch data types ........................................... 2-4
  - Batch sequence states .................................... B-1
  - Batch sequence transitions ............................... B-3
  - BSEQ function code ...................................... 2-15
  - Commands ................................................... 4-14
  - CSEQ function code ....................................... A-4
  - Function subroutines ...................................... 2-6
  - Monitor subroutine ........................................ 2-7
  - Phase subroutines ......................................... 2-4
  - Program construction ..................................... 2-8
  - Programs ..................................................... 2-3
  - Sample application ........................................ A-1
  - Syntax ....................................................... 4-1
  - Unit procedures .......................................... 2-1
- BATCH DATA statement ...................................... 4-30
- BATCH variable ............................................. 4-29
- BBUF ................................................................ 4-33
- Block array data structure ................................ 4-34
- Boolean expressions ........................................ 4-12
- Boolean operators ........................................... 4-12
- BREAK statement ............................................ 4-38
- BSEQ function block ....................................... 4-32
- BSEQ function code ......................................... 2-15

### C
- CALL ............................................................. 4-39
- CAMPAIGN variable ........................................ 4-40
- Case conversion command ................................... 4-44
- CASE statement .............................................. 4-41
- #CASESENSE directive ..................................... 4-43
- Commands
  - Case conversion ........................................... 4-44
  - Normalize string .......................................... 4-168

### D
- Comments ....................................................... 4-1
- Comparisons
  - Array ......................................................... 4-11
  - Variable to array ......................................... 4-10
  - Variable to limit .......................................... 4-10
  - Variable to list ........................................... 4-10
- CONNECT ....................................................... 4-64
- CONST ARRAY data structure .............................. 4-66
- CONST data ................................................... 4-65
- CONST STRING ARRAY data structure ................... 4-72
- CONST STRING data ........................................ 4-69
- Contents of instruction ..................................... 1-2
- Continuous section
  - Monitor subroutine ......................................... 2-8, 3-4
  - Phase subroutine ......................................... 2-5
  - State subroutine .......................................... 3-2
- CONTINUOUS statement ..................................... 4-75
- Control station function block ............................ 4-76
- Control structures
  - FOR...END FOR loop ....................................... 4-115
  - IF THEN...ELSE...ENDIF ............................... 4-139
  - IF THEN...ENDIF .......................................... 4-138
  - REPEAT...UNTIL ........................................... 4-195
  - WHILE...ENDWHILE .................................... 4-251
- CSEQ data structure ........................................ 4-45
- CSEQ function code ........................................ A-4
- CYCLE TIME variable ....................................... 4-80
- Data
  - CONST ......................................................... 4-65
  - CONST STRING ............................................ 4-69
  - VAR ........................................................... 4-235
  - VAR STRING ............................................... 4-240
- Data buffer function block ................................ 4-83
- Data export function block ................................ 4-85
- DATA statement ............................................. 4-81
- Data structures
  - Block array ............................................... 4-34
  - CONST ARRAY ............................................. 4-66
  - CONST STRING ARRAY ................................... 4-72
  - CSEQ ......................................................... 4-45
  - Function block array ..................................... 4-125
  - Function generator ....................................... 4-128
  - Global ......................................................... 4-131
  - INTEGRATOR ............................................... 4-143
  - Ramp data ................................................... 4-181
  - TIMER ......................................................... 4-222
- VAR ARRAY ................................................... 4-236
- VAR STRING ARRAY ......................................... 4-244
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data types</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batch 90</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#DEBUG LEVEL directive</td>
<td>4-93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declarations</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT PARAMETERS</td>
<td>4-232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declarations section</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function subroutine</td>
<td>2-7, 3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor subroutine</td>
<td>2-7, 3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase subroutine</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State subroutine</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATIONS statement</td>
<td>4-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#DESCRIPTOR directive</td>
<td>4-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device driver function block</td>
<td>4-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIGIT function</td>
<td>4-104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital exception report function block</td>
<td>4-101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#CASESENSE</td>
<td>4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#DEBUG LEVEL</td>
<td>4-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#EJECT</td>
<td>4-108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#HIHI</td>
<td>4-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#INCLUDE</td>
<td>4-140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#LIST</td>
<td>4-148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#MAXPARALLEL</td>
<td>4-150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#NOLIST</td>
<td>4-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#TITLE</td>
<td>4-225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD statement</td>
<td>4-105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE FAULT CODE statement</td>
<td>4-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document conventions</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DONE statement</td>
<td>4-107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function blocks</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advanced PID</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analog exception report</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch sequence</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control station</td>
<td>4-76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data buffer</td>
<td>4-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data export</td>
<td>4-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device driver</td>
<td>4-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital exception report</td>
<td>4-101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>4-122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-state device driver</td>
<td>4-158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control memory</td>
<td>4-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote manual set constant</td>
<td>4-190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote motor control</td>
<td>4-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smith predictor</td>
<td>4-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text selector</td>
<td>4-219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF TYPE 1 and 2</td>
<td>4-226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function generator data structure</td>
<td>4-128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTION subroutine</td>
<td>4-117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function subroutine description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batch 90</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIGIT</td>
<td>4-104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE ENTRY</td>
<td>4-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIZEOF</td>
<td>4-206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBR STATUS</td>
<td>4-218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT DESCRIPTOR</td>
<td>4-231</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Global data structures</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heading section</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function subroutine</td>
<td>2-7, 3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor subroutine</td>
<td>2-7, 3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase subroutine</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State subroutine</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#HIHI directive</td>
<td>4-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HISTORIAN BUFFER variable</td>
<td>4-133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HISTORIAN STATUS variable</td>
<td>4-134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLD</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold logic description</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOLD LOGIC section</td>
<td>4-136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to use this instruction</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF statement</td>
<td>4-137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF THEN...ELSE...ENDIF control structure</td>
<td>4-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF THEN...ENDIF control structure</td>
<td>4-138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCLUDE directive</td>
<td>4-140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INPUT statement</td>
<td>4-141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGRATOR data structure</td>
<td>4-143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST OPERATION variable</td>
<td>4-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST PHASE variable</td>
<td>4-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST SUBR variable</td>
<td>4-147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines of code</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST directive</td>
<td>4-148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOT variable</td>
<td>4-149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR RESTART POINT statement</td>
<td>4-200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXPARALLEL directive</td>
<td>4-150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min/Max array values</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINOR RESTART POINT statement</td>
<td>4-200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR declaration</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONITOR subroutine</td>
<td>4-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor subroutine description</td>
<td>2-7, 3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-state device driver function block</td>
<td>4-158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT OPERATION statement</td>
<td>4-163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT PHASE statement</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT STATE statement</td>
<td>4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOLIST directive</td>
<td>4-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal logic description</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase subroutine</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL LOGIC section</td>
<td>4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normalize string command</td>
<td>4-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notation</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION DESCRIPTOR function</td>
<td>4-170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATION variable</td>
<td>4-169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTPUT statement</td>
<td>4-171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch 90</td>
<td>2-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation</td>
<td>1-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF</td>
<td>4-184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE DESCRIPTOR function</td>
<td>4-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIPE ENTRY function</td>
<td>4-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference documents</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference extensions</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational expressions</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational operators</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control memory function block</td>
<td>4-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote manual set constant function block</td>
<td>4-190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote motor control function block</td>
<td>4-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPEAT...UNTIL control structure</td>
<td>4-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESERVE</td>
<td>4-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserved constants</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserved words</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESET</td>
<td>4-197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart logic description</td>
<td>4-197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART LOGIC section</td>
<td>4-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART statement</td>
<td>4-198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESUME</td>
<td>4-201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESUME AT statement</td>
<td>4-202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN statement</td>
<td>4-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample application</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch 90</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF</td>
<td>A-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections of</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function subroutine</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor subroutine</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase subroutine</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State subroutine</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET</td>
<td>4-204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET AND WAIT</td>
<td>4-205</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index (continued)

SIZEOF function ..................................................4-206
SKIP CYCLE statement .......................................4-207
Smith predictor function block .........................4-208
START ................................................................4-212
STATE SUBR subroutine ....................................4-213
State subroutine description .................................3-2

Statements
Assignment ..................................................................4-28
BATCH DATA .........................................................4-30
BREAK ......................................................................4-38
CASE ........................................................................4-41
CONTINUOUS ....................................................4-75
DATA .......................................................................4-81
DECLARATIONS ..................................................4-95
DISABLE EXTERNAL HOLD ..................................4-105
DISABLE FAULT CODE .......................................4-106
DONE .....................................................................4-107
ENABLE EXTERNAL HOLD ..................................4-109
ENABLE FAULT CODE .........................................4-110
ENDSUBR ..................................................................4-111
FAULT ......................................................................4-112
IF ...........................................................................4-137
INPUT .......................................................................4-141
MAJOR RESTART POINT ......................................4-200
MINOR RESTART POINT ......................................4-200
NEXT OPERATION..................................................4-163
NEXT PHASE .......................................................4-164
NEXT STATE ..........................................................4-165
OUTPUT ...............................................................4-171
PHASE .................................................................4-172
RESTART ...............................................................4-198
RESUME AT ..........................................................4-202
RETURN ..................................................................4-203
SKIP CYCLE ..........................................................4-207
UNIT DATA ............................................................4-229
WAIT FOR .............................................................4-248
WAIT UNTIL ............................................................4-249
STEP SUBR subroutine ..........................................4-215
Structure
Function subroutine ...............................................2-6, 3-3
Monitor subroutine ...............................................2-7, 3-4
Phase subroutine ....................................................2-4
State subroutine ......................................................3-2
SUBPHASE variable ................................................3-2
SUBR DESCRIPTOR function ..............................4-217
SUBR STATUS function ........................................4-218
Subroutines
FUNCTION ...........................................................4-117
MONITOR .............................................................4-151
PHASE SUBR ........................................................4-175
STATE SUBR ..........................................................4-213
STEP SUBR ............................................................4-215
Syntax .....................................................................4-1
Arithmetic expressions .........................................4-13
Arithmetic operators .............................................4-13
Array comparison ...............................................4-11
Boolean expressions ............................................4-12
Boolean operators ..................................................4-12
Comments ............................................................4-1
Directives ..............................................................4-8
Lines .......................................................................4-2
Min/Max array values ..........................................4-11
Names ....................................................................4-1
Notation ..................................................................4-8
Reference extensions ..........................................4-6
Relational expressions .........................................4-9
Relational operators ..............................................4-9
Reserved constants ...............................................4-5
Reserved words .....................................................4-2
Variable to array comparisons ............................4-10
Variable to limit comparison ...............................4-10
Variable to list comparisons ...............................4-10

T
Terms ........................................................................1-3
Text selector function block .................................4-219
TIMER data structure ..........................................4-222
#TITLE directive ..................................................4-225

U
UDF
Commands ..........................................................4-14
Data types ..........................................................3-1
Function subroutines ..........................................3-3
Monitor subroutines ..........................................3-4
Program construction ........................................3-5
Program execution ..............................................3-4
Programs .............................................................3-1
Sample application ............................................A-9
State subroutines ...............................................3-2
Syntax ...............................................................4-1
UDF TYPE 1 and 2 function blocks ....................4-226
UNACQUIRE ..........................................................4-227
UNCONNECT .........................................................4-228
UNIT DATA statement .........................................4-229
UNIT DESCRIPTOR function ............................4-231
UNIT PARAMETERS declaration .......................4-232
Unit procedures ....................................................2-1
UNRESERVE ..........................................................4-234
User qualifications .............................................1-2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V</th>
<th>W</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAR ARRAY data structure ..................</td>
<td>HISTORIAN STATUS ...........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR data ........................................</td>
<td>LAST OPERATION ..............................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR STRING ARRAY data structure ..........</td>
<td>LAST PHASE ..................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| VAR STRING data ............................... | LAST SUBR ...................................
| Variable to array comparisons ............. | LOT ............................................|
| Variable to list comparisons .............. | OPERATION ......................................|
| Variables                                | PHASE NUMBER .................................|
| ACK ................................................ | SUBPHASE ......................................|
| BATCH ............................................. | Wait FOR statement .........................|
| CAMPAIGN ........................................ | Wait UNTIL statement .......................|
| CYCLE TIME ...................................... | Wait WHILE statement ......................|
| FIRST CYCLE .................................... | WHILE...ENDWHILE control structure .......|
| HISTORIAN BUFFER .............................. |                                       |
For prompt, personal attention to your instrumentation and control needs or a full listing of Bailey representatives in principal cities around the world, contact the Bailey location nearest you.

**Australia**
Elsag Bailey Pty. Limited  
Regents Park, NSW  
Phone: 61-2-645-3322  
Telefax: 61-2-645-2212

**Japan**
Bailey Japan Company, Ltd.  
Tagata-Gun, Shizuoka-Ken  
Phone: 81-559-49-3311  
Telefax: 81-559-49-1114

**United Kingdom**
Bailey Automation plc  
Telford, Shropshire  
Phone: 44-1952-670-477  
Telefax: 44-1952-670-455

**Brazil**
Bailey do Brasil  
São Paulo  
Phone: 55-11-548-4122  
Telefax: 55-11-547-0315

**Jordan**
Bailey Controls Jordan  
Amman  
Phone: 962-6-788-116  
Telefax: 962-6-756-908

**United States**
Bailey Controls Company  
Wickliffe, Ohio  
Phone: 1-216-585-8500  
Telefax: 1-216-585-8756

**Canada**
Elsag Bailey (Canada), Inc.  
Burlington, Ontario  
Phone: 1-905-639-8840  
Telefax: 1-905-639-8639

**Mexico**
Bailey Mexico S.A. de C.V.  
Naucalpan  
Phone: 52-5-557-6100  
Telefax: 52-5-557-7022

**Venezuela**
Bailey de Venezuela SA  
Valencia  
Phone: 58-41-329-196  
Telefax: 58-41-327-632

**France**
Elsag Bailey S.A.  
Massy  
Phone: 33-1-64-47-2000  
Telefax: 33-1-64-47-2016

**Norway**
Bailey Norge A.S.  
Bergen  
Phone: 47-55-222-000  
Telefax: 47-55-222-010

**Germany**
Bailey-F & P Automation GmbH  
Overath  
Phone: 49-220-473-90  
Telefax: 49-220-473-979

**People’s Republic of China**
Bailey Beijing Controls  
Beijing  
Phone: 86-10-401-0651  
Telefax: 86-10-401-1643

**Italy**
Elsag Bailey  
Genoa  
Phone: 39-10-658-1  
Telefax: 39-10-658-2941

**Singapore**
Elsag Bailey Pte. Ltd.  
Singapore  
Phone: 65-442-3200  
Telefax: 65-442-2700